

Entering IHM Seminary in August, 1971 after graduating from college to take
these courses necessary for theology.

FW
Aug 12, 1971

Special Student

Petition for Affiliation with
DICCESE OF WINONA
As a Candidate for the Priesthood

Name Krough Jack Lee
(Family name) (First name) (Middle name)

Date and place of birth August 11, 1949 Estherville, Iowa

Member Parish of Sacred Heart Church, Waseca, Minnesota

I live in city _____; village Approx. 6,000 farm _____
(size) (size) (acres)

Parents' names John A. Krough Methodist
(Father) (Religion)
Muriel Jean Eastman Krough Methodist
(Mother) (Religion)

Address of parents 517 3rd Avenue S.E. Waseca Minnesota
Street (City) (State)

Occupation of father Assistant Herdsman for the Dairy Division of the Univ. of Minn.
Experiment station at Waseca

Number of brothers None sisters Two

Your relative position in family: 1, 2 or 3, etc. _____

Have you served as Altar Boy? No, I joined the church many years? _____
while in College.

Relatives within 2nd degree in Religion None None None
(Priests) (Brothers) (Sisters)

Schools attended: Parochial _____ Parochial _____
Grade (years) High School (years)
Public Six (Waseca School System) Public Six (Waseca School)
(years) (years)

Have you attended College? Yes, Morningside College Four years? Three years

Work experience: I worked three summers as a staff member at a Boy Scout Camp. I worked
two summers at a Bird's Eye plant. I was employed for a year as an
assistant librarian at the Waseca County Library. I worked as a janitor at
College. I was a panelist on a T.V. show in Sioux City. I am currently
working as a mechanic in training at a printing company.
(On reverse side of this paper write a short essay on "why I wish to study for the
priesthood".)

JK

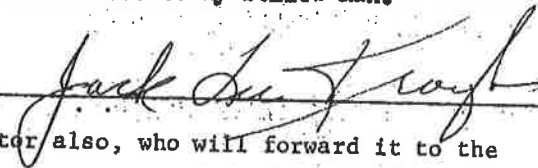
Essay to be written by the Candidate to the Bishop

Your Excellency:

I wish to study for the priesthood because I feel that God wants me to serve him and his church in this way. This is an age of serious problems for our world which each person must grapple with. I believe that the answers to many of the problems which plague all men are answered by the gospel message maintained by the church. I want to try to bring this message to other people as it was brought to me when I converted to the Catholic faith. I believe that I owe God so much, and I want to serve him in the manner that will be in keeping with his will and also of service to my fellow man.

Date June 27, 1970

Signed by



This application should be signed by your pastor also, who will forward it to the Chancery, Box 115, Winona, Minnesota.

(Recommendation of Pastor, including estimate of candidate, and his family history.)

Date _____

Signed _____

Pastor

The following documents are required: Certificates of Baptism, Confirmation, marriage of parents, and a recent health certificate from a physician. If any or all of these documents have been sent to the seminary, DO NOT DUPLICATE.

JK000272

Iowa Official Form No. 143-a. (Revised April, 1941)

Certificate of Marriage

State of Iowa, Emmet County

This Is To Certify, That on the 13 day of June A. D. 1948
at Armstrong, Iowa in said County,
First Methodist Church
according to and by authority of law, I duly

Joined in Marriage

John A. Krough
and
Muriel Jean Eastman

Given under my hand the 13 day of June A. D. 1948
Marriage solemnized in the presence of

Wesley W. Givler Wesley C. Bonham
Mrs. Velma Youngberg Methodist Minister

Certificate of Baptism

This is to Certify, that Jack Lee Krough

Son } of Mr. & Mrs. John A. Krough and _____
Daughter }

born on the 11 day of August 19 49 City Estherville State Iowa

was Baptised on the fifth day of April 19 69

According to the Rite of the Roman Catholic Church

in Sacred Heart Church at Waseca, MN

Sponsors { Jerome Rusl
Mrs. Jerome Rusl By the Rev. Donald G. Leary

as appears from the Baptismal Register of this Church.

711 The E. M. Lohmann Co., St. Paul, Minn.

Issued by Rev. DeSchimel Date 3-6-70

JK



THE HOLY SACRAMENT OF CONFIRMATION

This is to Certify

That Jack Krough

The Son } of John Krough
The Daughter }

and Muriel J. Eastman

baptized on 4/5/69 in the Church of Sacred Heart

Waseca, Minn.
city

received The Holy Sacrament of Confirmation

on March 18 19 69 in the Church of Immaculate

Conception, Sioux City, Iowa
city

by The Most Reverend Joseph M. Mueller

Sponsor was _____

Fr. Frank Brady Pastor

Date June 31, 1970

JK

August 2, 1971

Mr. Jack Krough
517-3rd Avenue S. E.
Waseca, Minnesota 56093

Dear Jack:

I am pleased with this letter to welcome you to membership in the community of Immaculate Heart of Mary Seminary. Our Admissions Committee has reviewed your papers of application and voted in favor of your acceptance, and you have been approved by Bishop Loras J. Watters as a candidate for the priesthood for the Diocese of Winona.

You will come to the seminary intending, I am sure, to develop as a liberally educated human person committed to Christ and to the service of your neighbor, to mature in your vocation and to prepare for admission to a school of theology. We hope, with Saint Mary's College, to offer you every opportunity for intellectual development, spiritual and personal formation and apostolic training, and we are anxious to see what contribution you will be able to make to the college and seminary communities.

Enclosed is a calendar for the coming school year and a page of excerpts from our seminary guidelines that will help you get ready.

I look forward to seeing you again on Saturday, August 21, or no later than Monday, the 23rd, if you must delay arrival because of the Scout program.

Fraternally in Christ,

(Rev.) Robert Brom
President

RB/rb

Enclosures 2

cc Bishop Loras J. Watters
Rev. Francis P. Kunz

JK000274

JK

August 27, 1971

Local Draft Board No. 125
Waseca County
Counthouse Building
Waseca, Minnesota 56093

Gentlemen:

This is to certify that

Jack Krough
517 Third Avenue S. E.
Waseca, Minnesota

is currently enrolled at Immaculate Heart of Mary Seminary, a recognized theological or divinity school, located at Saint Mary's College, Winona, Minnesota. Under my direction he is pursuing a full-time course of studies leading to the priesthood. Should he discontinue these studies, you will be notified immediately.

Very truly yours,

Most Rev. Loras J. Watters
Bishop of Winona

JK000275

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

January 16, 1972

Rev. Msgr. William Baumgartner, Rector
St. Paul Seminary
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Right Reverend Monsignor:

I hereby ask that you kindly submit to His Excellency, the Most Reverend Loras Wattus D.D., Bishop of Winona, my request for admission to Candidacy for priesthood. I declare that in making this request I do so entirely of my own volition and with complete freedom from compulsion of any kind.

Respectfully yours,

Jack Lee Krough

JK000276

1-18-72 Evaluation (Psychological)

Appraisal + Eval (Seminar)

Candidacy

Testimonial - no impediment/censure to receive Tonure d Sac Or

~~Letter of Intent (Presbyter)~~

Admittance to Candidacy

Acolyte 1974

"

Profession of Faith

Declaration of Freedom

Oath of Service to Diocese

Faculty Evaluation

Dispensation (son of a non-Catholic)

Permission to be admitted to Diaconate

Cert of Diaconal Ordination

Decl of freedom to Presbyterate

Request for promo to Presby

Prof of Faith

Decl of no impediment

Testimonial letter

~~Cert~~ Cert of Ordination to Presbyterate

JK

April 19, 1972

Mr. Jack Krough
Immaculate Heart of Mary Seminary
Terrac e Heights
Winona, Minnesota

Dear Jack, a

Father Brom, President of our Immaculate Heart of Mary Seminary, has informed me that you will complete your seminary course at our seminary this Spring and that you have asked to be assigned to St. Paul Seminary to continue your preparation for the priesthood of Christ in this Diocese of Winona. I am pleased, therefore, to assign you to St. Paul Seminary and I have written to the rector to tell him to expect to receive your application for admission.

I would appreciate it much if you would write to

The Rev. Msgr. William L. Baumgaertner
Rector, St. Paul Seminary
2260 Summit Avenue
St. Paul MN 55101

and ask for all information which you will need in registering for the seminary course.

In your work in the major seminary I know you will cooperate with the instruction and training which will be given to you in order to help you develop into a true shepherd of souls after the model of Our Lord Jesus Christ, Who was teacher, priest and shepherd. You will be prepared for the ministry of the Word so that you may always grow in your understanding of God's revealed word and may know how to grasp it through meditation and express it through word and conduct.

With your cooperation you will be prepared for the ministry of worship and sanctification, and by your prayers and participation in sacred liturgical ceremonies you will know how to

JK000277

JK

Mr. Jack Krough

-2-

April 19, 1972

exercise the work of salvation through the Eucharistic Sacrifice and the sacraments. Attending to your training with diligence you will be prepared for the ministry of a shepherd. You must learn to know how to represent Christ before men, remembering always that He did not "come to be served but to serve, and to give His life as a ransom for many" (Mk. 10:45).

Through your years of training I will watch your progress with great interest and pray that you might one day join the presbytery of the Diocese of Winona to aid in drawing the people of God closer to the Kingdom of Heaven. I shall always be pleased to visit with you and discuss your work.

With kindest personal greetings and a request for your prayers, I remain

Fraternally in Christ,

Bishop of Winona

JK000278

JK

CONFIDENTIAL APPRAISAL AND EVALUATION

NAME Jack L. Krough AGE 22
ADDRESS 517-3rd Avenue SE, Waseca, MN 56093
DIOCESE Winona CLASS Senior (Special)
MAJOR _____ G.P.A. _____

1. General Attitude

- Positive in every way
- Generally positive
- Indifferent
- Negative at times
- Cynical

2. Honesty

- Totally straightforward
- Basically sincere
- Questionable
- Occasionally deceitful
- Evasive and deceptive

3. Dependability

- Exceptionally reliable
- Very reliable
- Usually reliable
- Erratic
- Unreliable

4. Judgement and Common Sense

- Very well balanced
- Usually balanced and sound
- Sometimes inaccurate and wanting
- Often incorrect and deficient
- Faulty and lacking

5. Leadership and Initiative

- Consistently initiates and follows through
- Often shows initiative
- Seldom leads, generally follows
- Needs constant prodding
- Lacks the ability

6. Approach to Authority

- Outstanding
- Usually cooperative
- Occasionally uncooperative
- Inappreciative and resentful
- Hostile

7. Emotional Stability

- Exceptionally stable
- Very well balanced
- Fairly well balanced
- Subject to moods of depression or elation
- Emotionally unsuitable

8. Industry and Diligence in Work

- Very industrious
- Generally applied and diligent
- Inconstant
- Unmotivated and lazy
- Totally unapplied

9. Ease of Learning

- Brilliant
- Learns quite easily
- Learns with reasonable application
- Learns slowly
- Finds learning very difficult

10. Docility

- Completely humble and open
- Generally responsive
- Defensive and argumentative
- Opinionated
- Proud, stubborn and unteachable

11. Self-Expression

- Exceptionally articulate
- Clearly expressive
- Moderately fluent
- Slightly unintelligible
- Confused

12. Social Acceptance

- Sought out
- Well liked
- Accepted
- Tolerated
- Rejected

13. Social Rapport

- Very outgoing
- Mixes well
- Overly shy
- Clannish
- A social misfit

14. Manners

- Perfect gentleman
- Generally well-mannered
- Sometimes ill-mannered
- Coarse and gross
- Effeminate

JK000279

JK

15. Appearance

- Exceptionally good
- Above average
- Average
- Careless
- Sloppy

16. Self-Confidence

- Very self-confident
- Adequately self-confident
- Usually confident
- Often lacking in self-confidence
- Very insecure

17. Community Participation

- Always present when expected and fully participating
- Usually present and participating when expected
- Frequently absent or unparticipating
- More absent than present
- Extremely withdrawn

18. Generosity and Apostolicity

- Extremely generous and apostolically involved
- Consistently generous and involved
- Normally unselfish and sharing
- Never without prodding
- Selfish and uninvolved

19. Faith-expression

- Totally consistent and evident
- Good and maturing
- Inconsistent
- Deficient
- Lacking

20. Maturity of Vocation

- Fully decided
- Rather decided
- Undecided
- More unsure than sure
- Uninterested

OVERALL RECOMMENDATION

After consultation with the faculty and having considered his evaluation:

- I recommend him as a good candidate for the priesthood.
- I have some reservations but would still recommend him as a candidate for the priesthood.
- I have some substantial doubts about him but think that he could be given a chance to prove himself.
- I feel that he is unsuited for the priesthood.

A strong faith and ardent desire to share the faith with others are the qualities which above all make Jack a worthy candidate for the priesthood. He is well convinced of religious and Catholic values. He needs to continue in his efforts at self-donation without undue desire for self-affirmation. He views celibacy as a spiritual gift which he accepts, and to which he is willing to make response.

Signed:

(Rw.) Robert Brown

Date May 1972

President
Immaculate Heart of Mary Seminary
Winona, Minnesota 55987

JK000280

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Date 6/1/72

All physical examinations must be completed before entrance. Items found normal may be (✓) checked.

- 1. Name Jack L. Kraugh Age 22 Height 67 inches Weight 80 lbs.
- 2. Past Medical History:
- 3. Eyes: Vision without glasses Right 20/20 Left 20/50
Corrected with glasses Right 20/20 Left 20/20
- 4. Ears: Hearing: Right Normal Left Normal
- 5. Nose N
- 6. Teeth N
- 7. Throat N
- 8. Blood Pressure 120/78 Pulse 72 (Rate) Regular (Character)
- 9. Heart No murmur
- 10. Chest and Lungs Clear
- 11. Abdomen: Hemorrhoids None Hernia Minimal Impulse Below belly
- 12. Genitalia N
- 13. Endocrine System N
- 14. Nervous System N
- 15. Bones N
- Joints N
- Muscles N
- 16. Any abnormalities or defects (mutilations, etc.) not sufficiently described above:
N
- 17. Blood Wassermann Hemoglobin 16.8 gms
Urinalysis Sp. Gr. 1.020 Albumin NEG Sugar NEG Casts NEG
- 18. Mantoux Test New 71 - neg
(All positive reactors must be X-rayed.)
- 19. Polio Vaccination 10/62 11/62 3/63 oral
James W. Dey MD M. D.
Address Waseca

JK

REPORT CARD

THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY / 2260 SUMMIT AVENUE / SAINT PAUL, MINNESOTA 55101

1st Semester, 1972-1973

Krough, Jack L.

student

SUBJECT

GRADE

Winona

diocese

THEOLOGY I
class

DT 501 Introduction to Theology

SS 522 Words of Men

Hi 531 Early Church & Roman Empire

ST 562 Church at Prayer

Sp 571 Oral Reading

a

c

B

B

a

December 20, 1972

date

William L. Baumgartner

Msgr. William L. Baumgartner, Rector



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

January 19, 1973

Telephone (612) 698-0323

The Most Reverend Loras J. Watters
Bishop of Winona
Cathedral of Sacred Heart
360 Main St., Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987

Re: Jack L. Krough

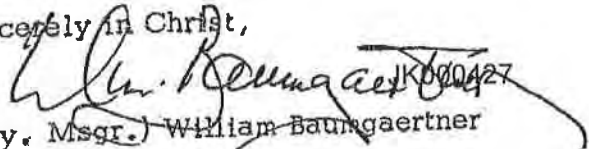
Dear Bishop Watters:

In accordance with the decision of the American Bishops at their meeting of November, 1972, that a personal handwritten letter be submitted requesting admission to candidacy for orders, Mr. Jack L. Krough, a student in the first year of theology for the Diocese of Winona, has submitted such a letter to me asking that he be formally accepted by you as a candidate for the diaconate and the presbyterate. In the absence of the new ceremonial rite, we have been authorized to use the ceremony of the Provisional Text of the 1972 Ritual. We have scheduled the ceremony of Admission to Candidacy at the St. Paul Seminary for February 2nd.

Although a man is no longer admitted into the clerical state by this ceremony, we do hereby request of you a formal acceptance of his candidacy and your authorization (similar to the dismissorial letter) that this acceptance be expressed in the ceremony of Admission to Candidacy on February 2, 1973, to be conducted by Bishop Raymond Lucker, the delegate of Archbishop Leo Byrne.

Our request is submitted at the petition of the candidate and expresses his desire to prepare for orders and his readiness to accept the guidance which you may offer him. The request does not include an evaluation or recommendation on the part of the seminary beyond our readiness to work with the candidate. It is too early in the year to submit a formal evaluation which will normally be completed only after Easter. The instruction for the new rite requires only that a man be twenty years of age and have begun his theological studies. These candidates have completed one semester of theology and are engaged in a one month Intensive Spiritual Training Program before beginning the second semester. May I await your response to this request with the hope and prayer that God will continue to bless your ministry.

Sincerely in Christ,


(Rev. Msgr.) William Baumgaertner

LORAS JOSEPH

By the Providence of God and the Favor of the Holy See

BISHOP OF WINONA

In accord with the Apostolic Letter Ministeria Quaedam
of our Holy Father Pope Paul VI, August 15, 1972, we accept

JACK L. KROUGH

as a candidate for the diaconate and presbyterate of the Diocese
of Winona. We testify that this young man is free from any
canonical impediment so far as we know. We commit to you, the
Reverend Monsignor William Baumgaertner, the faculty of present-
ing this young man to the Most Reverend Archbishop of St. Paul,
or any Bishop in communion with the Holy See, in order that he
might be officially accepted as a candidate for the diaconate
and presbyterate.

Given at Winona, this 22nd day of January, in the
year 1973.

Bishop of Winona

Chancellor

JK000428

LORAS JOSEPH

By the Providence of God and the Favor of the Holy See

BISHOP OF WINONA

In accord with the Apostolic Letter Ministeria Quaedam of our Holy Father Pope Paul VI, August 15, 1972, we accept

JACK L. KROUGH

as a candidate for the diaconate and presbyterate of the Diocese of Winona. We testify that this young man is free from any canonical impediment so far as we know. We commit to you, the Reverend Monsignor William Baumgaertner, the faculty of presenting this young man to the Most Reverend Archbishop of St. Paul, or any Bishop in communion with the Holy See, in order that he might be officially accepted as a candidate for the diaconate and presbyterate.

Given at Winona, this 22nd day of January, in the year 1973.

Bishop of Winona

Chancellor

JK000429

LEO

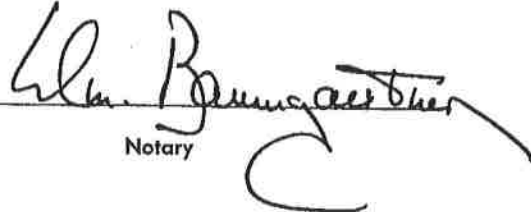
By the Providence of God
and
Favor of the Apostolic See
Archbishop of Saint Paul and Minneapolis

By this letter we announce and testify that our beloved son in Christ

JACK L. KROUGH

~~XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
was ordained to the order of~~

has been Admitted to Candidacy for Priesthood
on the 2nd of February, 1973
by The Most Reverend Raymond Lucker, D.D.
Given at St. Paul, Minnesota on this 7th day of February
in the year of Our Lord 1973.


Notary

JK

REPORT CARD

THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY / 2260 SUMMIT AVENUE / SAINT PAUL, MINNESOTA 55105

2nd SEMESTER, 1972-3

Krough, Jack L.
student

GRADE

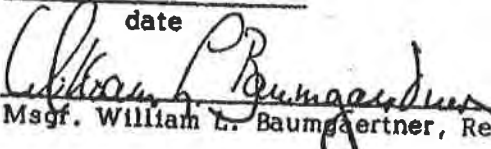
Winona
diocese

THEOLOGY I
class

- DT 502M Christian Teaching on God
- DT 503M Redemptive Christology
- SS 526M Gospel According to Mark
- Sp 572 Oral Reading
- Hi 631M Church in the Middle Ages

B
B
C
A
B

May 25, 1973
date


Msgf. William L. Baumgaertner, Rector

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

October 30, 1973

Magr. William Baumgartner, Rector
St. Paul Seminary
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Reverend Monsignor:

I hereby ask that you kindly submit to His Excellency, the Most Reverend Leo Byrne D.D., Archbishop of St. Paul, my request for installation in the Ministry of Lector. In making this request I express my desire and readiness to assume the responsibilities of this ministry for the service of the Church. To this end I have undertaken a program of preparation under the direction of the St. Paul Seminary.

Respectfully yours,
Jack Lee Kroug

JK000283

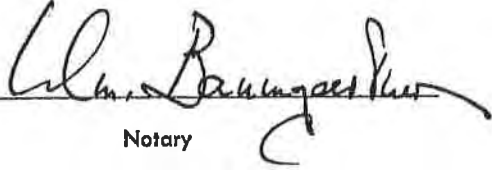
LEO

By the Providence of God
and
Favor of the Apostolic See
Archbishop of Saint Paul and Minneapolis

By this letter we announce and testify that our beloved son in Christ

JACK L. KROUGH
was instituted in the Ministry of
~~was ordained to the order of~~
Lector

on the 1st of November, 1973
by The Most Reverend Bishop Raymond Lucker
Given at St. Paul, Minnesota on this 30th day of May
in the year of Our Lord 1974


Notary

JK

REPORT CARD

THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY / 2260 SUMMIT AVENUE / SAINT PAUL, MINNESOTA 55105

Krough, Jack L.

student

FIRST SEMESTER , 1973-4

GRADE

Winona

diocese

THEOLOGY II

class..

6330M The Church of Christ

B

6410M Gen Concepts of Sacramentality

B

6510M General Moral Theology

B

6720 Public Speaking

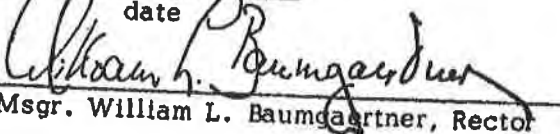
A

6321M Theological Anthropology I

B

Dec. 22, 1973

date



Msgr. William L. Baumgartner, Rector

JK000004

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

May 1, 1974

Telephone (612) 698-0323

Magr. William L. Baumgaertner, Rector
The St. Paul Seminary
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Right Reverend Monsignor:

I hereby ask that you kindly submit to His Excellency, the Most Reverend Leo Bing D.D., Archbishop of St. Paul and Minneapolis, my request for installation in the Ministry of Acolyte. I declare that in making this request I do so entirely of my own volition and with complete freedom from compulsion of any kind.

Respectfully yours,
Jack Lee Krough

JK000284

LEO

By the Providence of God
and
Favor of the Apostolic See
Archbishop of Saint Paul and Minneapolis

By this letter we announce and testify that our beloved son in Christ

JACK L. KROUGH

was instituted in the Ministry of
~~was ordained to the order of~~

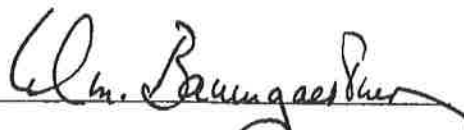
Acolyte

on the 9th of May, 1974

by The Most Reverend Archbishop Leo Binz

Given at St. Paul, Minnesota on this 29th day of May

in the year of Our Lord 1974


Notary

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

June 3, 1974

Telephone (612) 698-0323

The Most Reverend Loras J. Waters, D.D.
Bishop of Winona
275 Harriet Street
Winona, Minnesota 55987

Your Excellency:

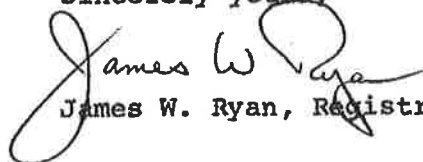
Enclosed you will find Ordination Certificate(s)

for JACK L. KROUGH

for the Order of _____

for the Ministry of LECTOR & ACOLYTE .

Sincerely yours,


James W. Ryan, Registrar

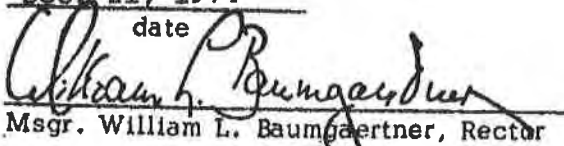
JK000287

JK

REPORT CARD

THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY / 2260 SUMMIT AVENUE / SAINT PAUL, MINNESOTA 55105

FIRST SEMESTER, 1974-5

<u>Krough, Jack</u> student		ST 7422M Sac of Ch II: Eucharist	GRADE <u>B</u>
<u>Winona</u> diocese	<u>THEOLOGY III</u> class	PT 7710 Hist & Theol of Catechetics	<u>A</u>
		PS 7720 Preaching	<u>A</u>
<u>Dec. 21, 1974</u> date		SS 6121M Johannine Literature I	<u>C</u>
 Msgr. William L. Baumgaertner, Rector		Hi 6210M Schism & Reform	<u>P</u>
		DT 7323M Theol Anthropology III	<u>B</u>

JK000005

JK

Testimonial Letter

LEO

Archbishop of Saint Paul and Minneapolis

We declare in the name of Christ and assure those who are concerned that

JACK L. KROUGH

during the time of his residence in our Archdiocese, insofar as it is known to us, has in no way contracted any impediment or ecclesiastical censure which might impede in any way his promotion to Tonsure or the Sacred Orders.

Given at St. Paul, Minnesota, under our seal, on this Third day of March, A.D. 1975.


Delegate of the Archbishop of Saint Paul

JK000288

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

Telephone (612) 698-0323

T E S T I M O N I A L L E T T E R

To Whom It May Concern

Through this document we hereby extend assurance that

JACK L. KROUGH


during the course of his studies at the Saint Paul Seminary

from 9/6/1972 to 3/3/1975

has conducted himself in commendable fashion, and insofar as, it is known to us has in no way contracted any impediment which might impede his promotion to Sacred Orders.

Given at the office of the Rector of the Saint Paul Seminary

on March 3, 1975.


William D. Baumgaertner,
Rector, Saint Paul Seminary

JK000289

JK



Diocese of Sioux City

CHANCERY OFFICE
1821 JACKSON STREET
SIOUX CITY, IOWA

MAILING ADDRESS:
P. O. BOX 1530
SIOUX CITY, IOWA 51102

March 5, 1975

Msgr. William Baumgaertner, Rector
St. Paul Seminary
2260 Summit Avenue
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Dear Father Baumgaertner:

We have received a letter from Jack L. Krough requesting a Testimonial Letter from us because of the fact he was a resident of our Diocese from September, 1967 to May, 1971, during the time he was a student at Morningside College in Sioux City, Iowa.

I have visited with Msgr. Frank H. Brady, Pastor of Immaculate Conception Church in Sioux City who knows Mr. Krough very well. He had frequent contact with him during the time he lived in Sioux City.

Msgr. Brady reports that his conduct was good.

We know of no irregularities incurred during this time and know of no reason why Mr. Krough could not be ordained.

Sincerely yours,

Frank H. Gretman
Bishop of Sioux City

Em

JK000290

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

March 5, 1975

Telephone (612) 698-0323

Msgr. William Baumgartner, Rector
St. Paul Seminary
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Dear Reverend Monsignor:

I hereby ask that you kindly submit to His Excellency, the Most Reverend Loras J. Watters, D.D., Bishop of Winona my request for promotion to the order of Diaconate. I declare that in making this request I do so entirely of my own volition and with complete freedom from compulsion of any kind.

Respectfully yours,
Jack L. Krough

JK000291



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

Telephone (612) 698-0323

Canonical Examination for the Diaconate

Diaconate - the first grade of the hierarchical or special ministry of the Church, constituted through the sacrament of Holy Orders.

Duties: To serve the People of God in the diaconia of liturgy, word, and charity, in communion with the bishop and his presbytery (VCII, Const. on Ch., n. 29)

Rite: of ordination:

- a. Call and presentation of the candidate, election by the bishop, consent of the people.*
- b. Instruction on the diaconate and examination of the candidate.*
- c. Prayer of the Church (Litany of the Saints) for the candidate.*
- d. Imposition of hands by the bishop and the prayer of ordination.*
- e. Vesting with stole and dalmatic.*
- f. Presentation of the book of Gospels*
- g. Kiss of Peace.*

Virtues: Service to God and man in charity and gladness of heart, chastity, spirit of poverty.



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

Telephone (612) 698-0323

(2)

*The deacon assumes the obligation of participation in the prayer of the Church in the Litany of the Hours (Divine Office)
He likewise embraces the obligation (unless already married) of perfect and perpetual continence for the sake of the Kingdom of Heaven. According to the tradition of the Latin rite, men are called to the priesthood only from among those who have espoused the celibate life.*

*Jack Lee Keough
March 11, 1975*

JK000293

JK

April 23, 1975

Mr. Jack Lee Krough
St. Paul Seminary
2260 Summit Avenue
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Dear Jack,

I am writing to give you some details about the occasion of your ordination, Friday, May 23, so that you might make preparations accordingly.

If you would like to come to Winona Thursday evening, you will be welcome to stay at the seminary, but you should make reservation to do so with Father Brom. I understand that ordinations in St. Paul may keep you from doing this.

On May 23 I would be happy to have you join me for lunch at the seminary at 1:00 p.m. At 2:00 o'clock we will move to the Cathedral to practice for the ceremony of ordination which, as you know, will begin at 4:30. Following this there will be a reception in Holy Family Hall of the Cathedral from 6:00 to 7:30. Snacks will be served.

You may make reservations with Father Brom for overnight accommodations at the seminary for guests who would find it too late to begin travel home after the reception. Please give him this information as soon as possible.

Prayerfully, I look forward with you to your ordination and ministry in the Diocese of Winona.

With kindest personal good wishes and asking a remembrance in your prayers, I remain

Faternally in Our Lord,

Bishop of Winona

JK000294

JK

May 7, 1975

Mr. Jack L. Krough
St. Paul Seminary
2260 Summit Avenue
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Dear Jack,

I am pleased to appoint you to your deacon internship in the Parish of Pax Christi, Rochester, effective June 16, 1975. I shall enclose a copy of a memorandum explaining the entire deacon program as supervised by Monsignor John A. Sweeney of the St. Paul Seminary. You will note that you will first have a summer session at St. Paul Seminary and then report to your parish assignment on August 15 and continue until December 26.

I wish to commend you for the splendid manner in which you have prepared to minister as a deacon to the spiritual and temporal needs of the people. I am sure that your zeal will greatly benefit the Catholic people whom you will serve.

It is diocesan policy that the deacon intern receive the same compensation as the newly ordained does in a first assignment. At the same time, of course, he is expected to follow a regular schedule as agreed upon with the pastor for the more effective service of the people. This will include, of course, time for prayer and theological reflection on the many pastoral experiences that will be yours.

With kindest personal greetings and prayers, I remain

Fraternally in the Lord Jesus,

Bishop of Winona

cc: Rev. James A. McCauley
Rev. Msgr. John A. Sweeney

JK000295

JK

May 7, 1975

Mr. Jack Lee Krough
St. Paul Seminary
2260 Summit Avenue
St. Paul, Minnesota

Dear Jack,

I shall enclose an application blank for you to fill out for inclusion in our priests' hospital/medical group. Please complete this form in the places indicated as soon as possible and return to me; a stamped addressed envelope is enclosed for your convenience. We have our policy with Wisconsin Life Insurance Company. We will ask the company to include you in our group as of July 1, 1975.

The diocese will pay the necessary premium during your deacon year. When you are assigned to one of the parishes or institutions of the diocese, it will be the responsibility of the parish or institution to pay the premium.

I hope that all is going well with you. I shall look forward to seeing you when you return to the diocese.

Personal best wishes.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

Chancellor

Enclosures

JK000296

JK

May 7, 1975

The Reverend James A. McCauley
Pastor, Pax Christi Church
4135 - 18 Avenue N. W.
Rochester, Minnesota

Dear Father McCauley,

Jack Kueh

I shall enclose a copy of a letter assigning one of our deacons to your parish for internship. I shall also enclose a memorandum describing the deacon internship program as supervised by Monsignor John A. Sweeney, Director of Field Education at St. Paul Seminary.

I thank you for your assurance that you will attend the session for pastor-supervisors and their deacon interns July 15 through July 17, 1975. I am sure that you will give valuable guidance to your deacon.

With kindest personal greetings, renewed gratitude for your cooperation, and a request for your prayers, I remain

Fraternally in the Lord Jesus,

Bishop of Winona

Enclosures

JK000297

OATH OF SERVICE TO A DIOCESE

As a subject of the (Arch)diocese of Wimona
_____, I solemnly promise and swear that, when I have
been promoted to Sacred Orders, I shall faithfully and perpetually
serve my diocese, and there shall carry out my work for the salva-
tion of the people.

May God and this holy Gospel, which I am touching with my hands,
be my aids. With faith in them, I affix my signature on this the
8th day of May, in the year 1975.

John Lee Kough

On the date noted above, this oath was properly taken in my
presence.

Joseph William ...
Ecclesiastical Notary
Delegate of the Bishop



Telephone (612) 698-0323

THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

Declaration of Freedom

I, the undersigned Jack Lee Krough, have delivered to the Bishop the petition for receiving the Order of Diaconate and, with the sacred Ordination impending, have carefully pondered the matter before God. Now that the oath has been put before me, I testify first of all that I have not been impelled into receiving this sacred Order by any coercion or force, or by any fear; rather, I voluntarily desire it and choose it with a full and free will, since I find and feel that I have been truly called by God.

I acknowledge that all the burdens and other ramifications of this sacred Order are fully known to me. I voluntarily desire and propose to undertake them, and I resolve, with God's aid, to observe them most diligently throughout the entire course of my life.

I especially profess that I clearly perceive what the law of celibacy occasions. I firmly resolve, with God's support, to fulfill this law willingly and to observe it completely - until the very end.

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

Telephone (612) 698-0323

(2)

Finally, with a sincere faith I solemnly promise that I am going to comply most submissively, according to the rule of the sacred Canons, with all those things which those in authority prescribe and the discipline of the Church requires. I shall always be prepared to offer examples of virtue, whether in word or deed, to such an extent that I might be worthy to be rewarded by God for undertaking such an office.

This I vow. This I swear. This I solemnly promise. And in this may God and the Holy Gospel of God, which I touch with my hands, aid me.

Just Lee Krough

At
On

Subscriptum rite coram me continetur testat.

J. Paul M. ...
...
...
...

On 8 May A. D. 1978

I, Jack Lee Knight, with firm faith, believe and profess all and everything that is contained in the Symbol of Faith, that is:

I believe in one God, the Father almighty, maker of heaven and earth, and of all things visible and invisible.

And I believe in one Lord, Jesus Christ, the only begotten Son of God. Born of the Father before all ages. God of God, Light of Light, true God of true God. Begotten, not made, of one substance with the Father, by whom all things were made. Who for us men and for our salvation came down from heaven. And he became flesh by the Holy Spirit of the Virgin Mary: and was made man. He was also crucified for us, suffered under Pontius Pilate, and was buried. And on the Third day he rose again, according to the Scriptures. He ascended into heaven and sits on the right hand of the Father. He will come again in glory to judge the living and the dead. And of his kingdom there will be no end.

And I believe in the Holy Spirit, the Lord and Giver of life, who proceeds from the Father and the Son. Who together with the Father and the Son is adored and glorified, and who spoke through the prophets.

And one, holy, Catholic and Apostolic Church. I confess one baptism for the forgiveness of sins. And I await the resurrection of the dead and the life of the world to come.

I firmly embrace and accept all and everything which has been either defined by the Church's solemn deliberation or affirmed and declared by its ordinary magisterium concerning the doctrine of faith and morals, accordingly as they are proposed by it, especially those things dealing with the mystery of the Holy Church of Christ, its sacraments and the sacrifice of the Mass, and the primacy of the Roman Pontiff.

Jack Lee Knight
Signature

[Handwritten Signature]
Signature of Witness

Given at St. Paul, Wisconsin on this, the 8
of May, 1928.

THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55101

Office of Rector

May 10, 1975

FACULTY EVALUATION: Jack Lee Krough, Theology III, Diocese of Winona

Jack Krough is 26 years old, from Sacred Heart Parish in Waseca. Both parents are living; both are non-Catholic.

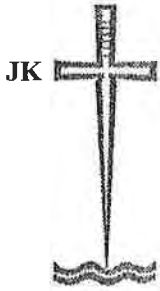
Jack has grown over the past year in several significant ways. First of all, he has learned to work with others in cooperative situations. He has learned to give others room to express their thoughts. He is more able to enter into conversations without necessarily dominating the talk or always taking the initiative to suggest the topic and fill the silence. Secondly, he has manifested a very deep sensitivity to others, especially in situations where people are hurting. He has distinct counseling skills, substantially above average, and can grow rapidly in that area with further help. He is very perceptive, and his educational background has given him the tools to relate to people that are in crisis. During his January Interim in Clinical Pastoral Training at St. Paul Midway Hospital (where he was chaplain to Jean Claude Killey!) he learned to draw out those in the group who were not as verbal as himself and yet also to show his own feelings and his own concerns.

Another area of serious concern is his ability to find creative outlets for his anger and frustration when it occurs. He appears to be struggling with the tension of being independent and yet learning to use dependency in a wholesome way in group work and he is coming to some quite good resolutions of this tension. He still tends at times to come on in an authoritative way, to pontificate a bit; his peers and those in authority handle this well. The question we put to him is whether he can learn to use authority well. We believe he is growing in this. Some of the weakness in this area would show occasionally in a compulsion to change everything, to shake things up, kind of a one-man groundswell.

Jack appears to have a sound attitude toward priestly ideals. His piety has grown more firm and is better grasped interiorly. He is more regular in participation in communal prayer. His judgments are good. He is well accepted by his peers. He is well-balanced emotionally. He is industrious, has real leadership potential, and is dependable. He feels that he should improve in organization and consistency in his daily life, especially in the use of time. Despite this, he is considered to quite efficient, a man who gets things done.

The faculty offered him a unanimous recommendation for advancement to the diaconate and I am happy to convey their recommendation. Jack is growing in the above areas and I am happy to report this.

W. S. G. W. R. [Signature]



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

May 13, 1975

Telephone (612) 698-0323

The Most Reverend Loras J. Watters, D.D.
Bishop of Winona
275 Harriet Street
Winona, Minnesota 55987

Your Excellency:

Enclosed please find documents from the file of
JACK L. KROUGH who is to be ordained
to the Diaconate on May 23rd . The documents
are:

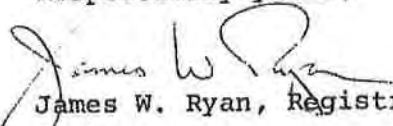
- (x) Petition for Diaconate
- (x) Profession of Faith
- (x) Canonical Examination for Diaconate
- (x) Declaration of Freedom
- (x) Oath of Service to a Diocese

Testimonial Letters

- (x) Archdiocese of St. Paul & Mpls.
- (x) St. Paul Seminary.

If there is anything further you would wish, please
let us know.

Respectfully yours,


James W. Ryan, Registrar
encls.

JK000303



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

May 13, 1975

Telephone (612) 698-0323

The Most Reverend Loras J. Watters, D.D.
Bishop of Winona
275 Harriet Street
Winona, Minnesota 55987

Your Excellency:

This is to certify that JACK L. KROUGH of the Diocese
of Winona is a candidate for: _____
_____ date

- a) Admission to Candidacy () _____
- b) Ministry of Lector () _____
- c) Ministry of Acolyte () _____
- d) Order of Diaconate () May 23, 1975
- e) Order of Priesthood () _____

- He has () been approved by the faculty in regard to his observance of seminary rules, his spiritual life, and his scholastic record,
 () passed successfully the canonical examination in the Order he is about to receive,
 () made out the required petitions for Candidacy, Ministry or Orders,
 () made the Declaration of Freedom required for Orders,
 () made the Profession of Faith,
 () taken the Oath of Service to the Diocese,
 () received the Testimonial Letters from every Diocese in which he spent six months or more after his 15th year,
 () completed the required retreat.

May it please Your Excellency to
 () send DIMISSORIAL LETTERS for the Candidate and the Orders indicated above.
 () send LETTER OF APPROVAL of his acceptance for Admission to Candidacy.

Respectfully yours,

Msgr. William Baumgaertner, Rector


P.S. Mr. Krough needs dispensation #987.1 (non-Catholic parents).

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA

Mr. Jack Lee Krough:

By virtue of powers granted to me in the Motu Proprio,
"Pastorale Munus," of Pope Paul VI promulgated on
December 3, 1963, I hereby grant in your favor a dis-
pensation from the impediment to Orders as described
in Canon 987, No. 1.


Bishop of Winona

Given at Winona, Minnesota, this 14th day of May, 1975

JK000305

JK

LORAS JOSEPH

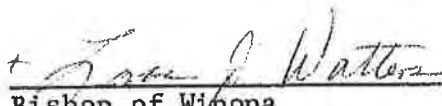
By the Providence of God and the Favor of the Holy See
Bishop of Winona

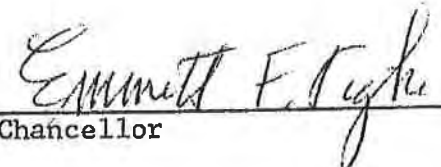
ACCEPTANCE FOR ORDINATION TO THE DIACONATE

Jack Lee Krough has personally and of his own free will petitioned for admission to the Order of Diaconate.

Since all canonical requirements have been fulfilled, I, the undersigned Ordinary, do hereby accept his petition and grant permission for him to be admitted into the Order of Diaconate at the sacred ordination ceremony to be celebrated at the Cathedral of the Sacred Heart, Winona, Minnesota, on May 23, 1975, I myself officiating.

May 14, 1975


Bishop of Winona


Chancellor

JK000306

JK

May 14, 1975

Mr. Jack Lee Krough
St. Paul Seminary
2260 Summit Avenue
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Dear Jack,

The grace and peace of Our Lord Jesus Christ be with you!

On this day I have received your petition to be ordained to the Order of Diaconate. Since I know that you have prepared for your ministry in the Church by prayer and study, have fulfilled all canonical requirements, and have been approved by the Seminary faculty, I am pleased to call you to ordination. I shall enclose the document showing your acceptance for ordination to the Diaconate.

I shall prayerfully look forward to the ordination ceremony in our Cathedral of the Sacred Heart on May 23, when it will be my privilege to impose hands on you and pray that you be consecrated and raised to the Order of Deacon.

It is with great joy that I anticipate your joining with me and the priests of the Diocese of Winona in ministering to the People of God entrusted to our care. Your exercise of the Order of Deacon will be of great benefit in fulfilling our pastoral responsibilities.

As a minister of the Liturgy, you will proclaim the Gospel, make all preparations for the Sacrifice, and distribute the body and blood of the Lord to the faithful. You will instruct the faithful in doctrine, preside over public prayer, confer Baptism, assist at marriages, bring Viaticum to the dying, and lead the rites of burial. Pray that you will undertake the ministry of charity and carry out your duties in such a way that our people will recognize you as a disciple of Christ, Who came to serve rather than be served.

With kindest personal greetings and a request for your prayers,
I remain

Fraternally in the Lord Jesus,

JK000307

JK

LORAS JOSEPH WATTERS

By the Providence of God and the Favor of the Apostolic See
BISHOP OF WINONA

By this letter we announce and testify that our beloved in Christ

JACK LEE KROUGH

was ordained to the order of

DIACONATE

On the 23rd day of May, 1975

at Cathedral of the Sacred Heart, Winona, Minnesota.

Given at Winona, Minnesota, on this 23rd day of May

in the year of Our Lord 1975.

+ Joseph J. Watters
Bishop of Winona

Emmett F. Tighe
Charcellor

JK000308

JK

To Whom It May Concern:

This is to certify that

The Reverend Jack Lee Krough
is an ordained Minister of Religion of the Diocese
of Winona. He is authorized to assist at marriages
according to the ecclesiastical canons of the Roman
Catholic Church

Given at the Chancery of the Diocese of Winona
this 23rd day of May 1975.

Bishop of Winona

JK000309

JK

REPORT CARD

THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY / 2260 SUMMIT AVENUE / SAINT PAUL, MINNESOTA 55105

SECOND SEMESTER, 1974-5

GRADE

Krough, Jack L.
student

SS 6111M The Pentateuch II

E

Winona THEOLOGY III
diocese class

ST 7430M Marriage of Christians

E

PS 7721 Preaching

A

May 30, 1975
date

MT 7510M The Christian Virtues

E

William L. Baumgaertner
Msgr. William L. Baumgaertner, Rector

SS 5120M Canon & Inspiration in SS

B

Interim 1975 Modified Clinical Pastoral

S

JK

June 11, 1975

Rev. Mr. Jack L. Krough
517 Third Avenue S. E.
Waseca, Minnesota

Dear Jack,

I wish to inform you that as of July 1, 1975 you are enrolled in our priests' hospital/medical group with Wisconsin Life Insurance Company. I shall enclose a booklet describing the program. Included in the booklet is a copy of your application form and also your identification card. Please carry this I.D. card with you.

Personal best wishes.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

Chancellor

Enclosure

JK000310

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

26 April 1976

Monsignor William Baumgaertner, Rector
St. Paul Seminary
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Dear Reverend Monsignor:

I hereby ask that you kindly submit to His Excellency, the Most Reverend Loras J. Watters, D.D., Bishop of Winona my request for promotion to the order of presbyters. I declare that in making this request I do so entirely of my own volition and with complete freedom from compulsion of any kind.

Respectfully yours,
Jack LeKrogh

JK000311

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

Declaration of Freedom

I, the undersigned Jack Lee Krough, have delivered to the Bishop the petition for receiving the Order of Presbyter and, with the sacred Ordination impending, have carefully pondered the matter before God. Now that the oath has been put before me, I testify first of all that I have not been impelled into receiving this sacred Order by any coercion or force, or by any fear; rather, I voluntarily desire it and choose it with a full and free will, since I find and feel that I have been truly called by God.

I acknowledge that all the burdens and other ramifications of this sacred Order are fully known to me. I voluntarily desire and propose to undertake them, and I resolve, with God's support, to fulfill this law willingly and to observe it completely - until the very end.

I especially profess that I clearly perceive what the law of celibacy occasions. I firmly resolve, with God's support, to fulfill this law willingly and to observe it completely - until the very end.

Finally, with a sincere faith I solemnly promise that I am always going to comply most submissively, according to the rule of the sacred Canons, with all those things which those in authority prescribe and the discipline of the Church requires. I shall always be prepared to offer examples of virtue, whether in word or deed, to such an extent that I might be worthy to be rewarded by God for undertaking such an office.

This I vow. This I swear. This I solemnly promise. And in this may God and the Holy Gospel of God, which I touch with my hands, aid me.

*At St. Paul Seminary
On April 27, 1976*

Instrumentum rite coram hoc ministerio testat.

Jack Lee Krough
Wm. Baerengard

Notarius ecclesiasticus

17 April 1976

JK000312

PROFESSION OF FAITH

I, Jack Lee Krough, with firm faith, believe and profess all and everything that is contained in the Symbol of Faith, that is:

I believe in one God, the Father almighty, maker of heaven and earth, and of all things visible and invisible.

And I believe in one Lord, Jesus Christ, the only begotten Son of God. Born of the Father before all ages. God of God, Light of Light, true God of true God. Begotten, not made, of one substance with the Father, by whom all things were made. Who for us men and for our salvation came down from heaven. And he became flesh by the Holy Spirit of the Virgin Mary: and was made man. He was also crucified for us, suffered under Pontius Pilate, and was buried. And on the Third day he rose again, according to the Scriptures. He ascended into heaven and sits on the right hand of the Father. He will come again in glory to judge the living and the dead. And of his kingdom there will be no end.

And I believe in the Holy Spirit, the Lord and Giver of life, who proceeds from the Father and the Son. Who together with the Father and the Son is adored and glorified, and who spoke through the prophets.

And one, holy, Catholic and Apostolic Church. I confess one baptism for the forgiveness of sins. And I await the resurrection of the dead and the life of the world to come.

I firmly embrace and accept all and everything which has been either defined by the Church's solemn deliberation or affirmed and declared by its ordinary magisterium concerning the doctrine of faith and morals, accordingly as they are proposed by it, especially those things dealing with the mystery of the Holy Church of Christ, its sacraments and the sacrifice of the Mass, and the primacy of the Roman Pontiff.

Jack Lee Krough
Signature

Wm. Benjamin
Signature of Witness

Given at St. Paul Seminary, St. Paul, Minn. on this, the 27th
of April, 1976.

JK

REPORT CARD

THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY / 2260 SUMMIT AVENUE / SAINT PAUL, MINNESOTA 55105

SECOND SEMESTER 1975-76

GRADE

Krough, Jack L.

student

ST 8423M Sacraments of the Church III B

Winona

THEOLOGY IV

Li 8610 Pastoral Liturgy B

diocese

class

PT 8710 The Contemporary Family C

May 21, 1976

date

PS 8720 Liturgical Oral Read & Preach C

William L. Baungaertner

PT 9720 Theol Reflections on Min Exper S

Msgr. William L. Baungaertner, Rector

JK

Testimonial Letter

JOHN

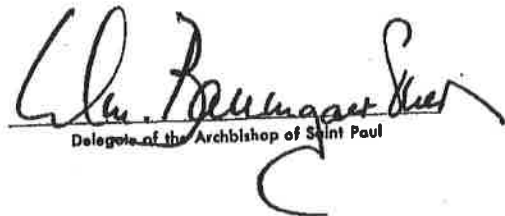
Archbishop of Saint Paul and Minneapolis

We declare in the name of Christ and assure those who are concerned that

JACK L. KROUGH

during the time of his residence in our Archdiocese, insofar as it is known to us, has in no way contracted any impediment or ecclesiastical censure which might impede in any way his promotion to Tonsure or the Sacred Orders.

Given at St. Paul, Minnesota, under our seal, on this 29th day of
April, A.D. 1976.


Delegate of the Archbishop of Saint Paul

JK000314

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

Telephone (612) 698-0323

T E S T I M O N I A L L E T T E R

To Whom It May Concern

Through this document we hereby extend assurance that

JACK L. KROUGH


during the course of his studies at the Saint Paul Seminary

from September 2, 1972 to April 29, 1976

has conducted himself in commendable fashion, and insofar as it is known to us has in no way contracted any impediment which might impede his promotion to Sacred Orders.

Given at the office of the Rector of the Saint Paul Seminary

on April 29, 1976.


William L. Baumgartner,
Rector, Saint Paul Seminary

JK000315

JK



THE SAINT PAUL SEMINARY

2260 Summit Avenue, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55105

April 30, 1976

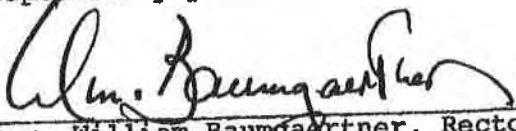
Telephone (612) 698-0323

Most Reverend and dear Bishop Watters,

I hereby certify that Rev. Mr. Jack L. Krough, a subject of your Diocese, is a candidate for the priesthood, and that he has fulfilled the following requirements for his ordination:

1. He is an ordained deacon.
2. He is of canonical age.
3. He has completed the preparations specified in Canons 976 and 993, #2.
4. He has ~~(has not)~~ made the canonical retreat of six days (Canon 1001).
5. He has ~~(has not)~~ passed the canonical examinations required for the reception of the priesthood (Canon 996) and for receiving the faculties to hear confessions and to preach (Canons 877 and 1340).
6. He has met all the requirements of the Decree of the Sacred Congregation of the Sacraments, December 27, 1930, and of the reserved letter of December 27, 1955, from the same Congregation.
7. He is of good character, and his conduct has been satisfactory.
8. To the best of our knowledge, he is free from canonical impediments and irregularities.
9. Testimonial Letters and other documents have already been sent.
10. He has, of his own volition, filed a letter requesting ordination to the priesthood.

Respectfully yours in Christ,


Msgr. William Baumgaertner, Rector

WB/jr

documents enclosed

JK000316

JK

May 11, 1976

Rev. Mr. Jack L. Krough
St. Paul Seminary
2260 Summit Avenue
St. Paul, Minnesota 55105

Dear Jack,

With this letter I wish to inform you that I shall be pleased to ordain you to the Order of Priesthood in the Cathedral of the Sacred Heart, Winona, on May 21, 1976. In the event I am not able to officiate as the ordaining bishop, I grant you permission to receive this Order of Priesthood, for the service of our Diocese of Winona, from a bishop in communion with the Holy See.

I have called you to the Order of Priesthood after I was assured that:

- 1) You have manifested your free intention to receive the Order.
- 2) Your service in the Diocese of Winona will be very useful for the ministry to the People of God.
- 3) Your age is sufficient to receive the above mentioned Order
- 4) The rector and faculty of the St. Paul Seminary, St. Paul, have issued Testimonial Letters.
- 5) You have not contracted any impediment, irregularity or censure, and your moral character corresponds to the Order you are about to receive.
- 6) You have fulfilled the requirements of spiritual retreat and Profession of Faith before receiving the Order.

With kindest personal greetings, and looking forward to May 21st, I remain

Fraternally in Christ Jesus,

Joseph J. Watters
Bishop of Winona

Witnessed by

Emmett F. Figue
Chancellor

JK000317

JK

LORAS JOSEPH WATTERS

By the Providence of God and the Favor of the Apostolic See

BISHOP OF WINONA

By this letter we announce and testify that our beloved in Christ

JACK LEE KROUGH

was ordained to the order of

PRIESTHOOD

on the 21st day of May, 1976

at Cathedral of the Sacred Heart, Winona, Minnesota.

Given at Winona, Minnesota on this 21st day of May

in the year of Our Lord 1976.

Loras J. Watters
Bishop of Winona

Emmitt F. Tigue
Chancellor

JK000318

JK

May 24, 1976

Reverend Jack L. Krough
517 Third Avenue S. E.
Wasaca, Minnesota 56093

Dear Father Krough:

I am pleased to appoint you as fulltime instructor of religion at Pacelli High School, Austin, and associate pastor of St. Augustine Parish, Austin, Effective June 11, 1976. I am very pleased and happy to welcome you to your first pastoral assignment in the Diocese.

I wish at this time to commend you for the splendid manner in which you have prepared to minister to the spiritual and temporal needs of the people who will live under your care. I am sure that your priestly zeal will greatly benefit the Catholic people whom you will serve through all your years. At St. Augustine Parish you will have many and varied opportunities to lead the People of God closer to the Kingdom of Heaven.

With kindest personal greetings and a request for your prayers, I remain

Fraternally yours,

Bishop of Winona

cc - Rev. Paul Nelson
Rev. Richard Engels

JK000319

JK

June 24, 1976.

Rev. John Krough
St. Augustine Parish
405 4th St. N. W.
Austin, Minn. 55912

Dear Father Krough:

Bishop Watters has asked me to write to you about the terms of your seminary obligation. As you know, the Diocese of Winona assumed obligation of paying room, board, tuition, etc., during your major seminary years.

During the last several years Bishop Watters has had an oral agreement with men ordained to the priesthood of the Diocese that they repay \$1,000.00 within five years after ordination. The funds which you repay to the Diocese will be used to help other students prepare for the priesthood. A discount of 15% will be allowed on your obligation if it is paid in full before December 31 of this year. The payment thus amounts to \$850.00. If it is not paid in this time, you should arrange to make regular monthly payments of approximately \$20.00 or annual payments of at least \$200.00. An annual interest rate of 6% will be charged on any unpaid balance beginning January 1, 1977. Please write to me and describe the plan that you have for repayment.

With kindest personal regards and praying God to bless you and your work, I remain

Sincerely yours in Christ,

Rev. Msgr. Emmett F. Tighe
Chancellor

JK000320



405 Four

West Austin, Minnesota 55912

SOCIETY OF SAINT AUGUSTINE

Rev. Msgr. Emmett F. Tighe
Diocese of Winona
275 Harriet Street
Winona, Minnesota 55987

Dear Msgr. Tighe

In regards to your letter of June 24 concerning the terms of my seminary obligation, the following is my plan for repayment. On July 1, I will make a first payment of \$100 followed by 5 monthly payments of \$150 to total \$850. Payment should be completed by the conclusion of the present year, 1976. I hope this will be satisfactory. Thank-you.

Fraternally in Christ,

Jack L. Krough
Rev. Jack L. Krough

	<u>Amnt. pd.</u>	<u>Balance due</u>
		\$850.00
7/3/76	\$100.00	750.00
8/3/76	150.00	600.00
10/7/76	150.00	450.00
11/9/76	150.00	300.00
12/8/76	150.00	150.00
9/9/76	150.00	—



405 Fourth

St. Austin, Minnesota 55912

CHURCH OF SAINT AUGUSTINE

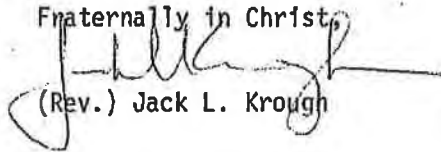
December 6, 1976

Rev. Don Schmitz, Chancellor
Diocese of Winona
Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987

Dear Father Schmitz:

Enclosed is a check for One hundred and fifty dollars (150.00) which completes the payment of the sum of \$850.00 which your predecessor, Msgr. Emmet Tighe, informed me would fulfill my agreement with the Bishop in regards to repaying the Diocese for a part of my seminary education. Thank you.

Fraternally in Christ,



(Rev.) Jack L. Krough

CHECK ENCLOSED

JK000321

JK



405 Fourth Street Northwest Austin, Minnesota 55912

January 27, 1978

Rev. R. H. Taylor
Bureau of Priest's Retirement
St. Mary's College
Winona, Minn

CHURCH of SAINT AUGUSTINE

Dear Father:

The quarterly statement I received for 1-1-78 showed a previous balance of \$75.00. An examination of my records and cancelled checks showed that the full \$300.00 had been paid in four installments in 1977 completing my commitment. Please correct this record if it is still in error. Thank you.

Sincerely,

Jack L. Krough
(Rev.) Jack L. Krough

*Payments received
& recorded*
1/11 - 75⁰⁰
6/11 - 75⁰⁰
7/12 - 75⁰⁰

JK

February 24, 1978

Rev. Jack L. Krough
Church of Saint Augustine
405 Fourth St., N.W.
Austin, MN 55912

Dear Father Krough:

Thank you for your letter of January 27th regarding the billing of your account.

According to our records, we show credits to your account for 1977 as follows:

Jan. 11, 1977	\$75.00
June 1, 1977	\$75.00
July 12, 1977	\$75.00

This is a total of \$225.00 leaving a balance for 1977 of \$75.00.

In order to find an incorrect posting, we would need to know the date of the check, number of the check, and the endorsement from the back of the check.

Would you please send us a copy of both sides of the check which we appear to be missing. Your account will be immediately credited.

Sincerely yours,

(Rev.) Robert H. Taylor
Secretary/Treasurer
BUREAU OF PRIESTS' RETIREMENT

RHT/jsk

JK000323

+

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Bishop

PO Box 588
Tel. 507/454-4643

May 22, 1980

The Reverend Jack L. Krough
Church of St. Augustine
Austin, MN

Dear Father Krough,

"Lord Jesus, send us Your Spirit to make us holy!"

With this invocation which we pray so often as we await the feast of Pentecost I begin this letter of appointment. In the name of the risen Lord Jesus and of His Church which is guided by the Holy Spirit I appoint you to the faculty of Cotter High School with residence and some pastoral duties at the Church of Saint Stanislaus here in Winona. This appointment is to be effective Monday, June 23, 1980.

Also, of course, I want to thank you for your splendid work at Pacelli High School and the Church of Saint Augustine in Austin for these past four years. You know that the students and faculty of Pacelli as well as the priests, Sisters, and lay people of St. Augustine join me in praising God for what you have contributed to the up-building of the faith community in the school and the parish. We hasten to thank you for your priestly dedication, effective teaching by word and example, and your ministry of Word, Sacrament, and service in Austin.

You will bring the benefit of your growth in priestly holiness and experience in teaching to Cotter and Saint Stanislaus. All of us, your brothers in the priesthood, welcome you with open arms. While we understand that you will miss Pacelli and Saint Augustine, we are also confident that you will come to feel very much at home here in Winona.

While the official announcement of your appointment will be carried in THE COURIER of June 12th, you may make it to the people of Saint Augustine on this Pentecost Sunday. This is a most appropriate day to be "missioned in the name of the Lord" because it was on Pentecost that the Holy Spirit empowered the Apostles to actually proclaim the Good News; as we know, up to that moment they had been weak and afraid. May the Holy Spirit continue to guide and strengthen you in your new appointment to serve another portion of the pilgrim people of God.

With deep gratitude for your willingness to share with me the privilege and responsibility of responding to the pastoral needs of the people entrusted to our care and with a request for your prayers, I remain

Fraternaly in Christ,

Bishop of Winona

cc: Reverend Monsignor Roy E. Literski, Reverend Richard J. Engels, Reverend Vern Trocinski, Reverend Michael Hoepfner, and Reverend Thomas J. Jennings

JK000324

JK

St. Stanislaus Church

625 EAST FOURTH ST.

WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

507-452-5430

October 13, 1980

Dear Bishop,

Saturday I received your letter expressing your desire for a priest to serve as a chaplain to the National Guard. Dennis Schimek approached me on the subject several years ago, and at that time I was not interested. After I received your letter, however, I discussed it with Fr. Leterski who encouraged me to reconsider. I spent some time this week-end praying about it, and assessing my ability to fulfill this role. The conclusion that I reached was that while I would never actively seek it, I would be willing to serve as a National Guard chaplain if you feel that it is in the best interest of the Church.

If this is a way that I could serve the Church, I would be happy to serve in this special ministry. Fr. Leterski and I seem to agree that it would not be a burden on the other priests of the parish, and I would hope that I would have something of value to offer the men of the National Guard.

Please feel free to consider me for this chaplaincy.

With my prayers,


(Rev.) Jack L. Krough

JK000325

JK

October 24, 1960

The Reverend Jack L. Krough
Saint Stanislaus Church
625 E. 4th Street
Winona, MN

Dear Father Krough,

Prayerful greetings in the name of Christ Jesus who is Lord for ever and ever!

Thank you for your kind letter in response to my inquiry about possible interest in serving the pastoral needs of the men and women in our Minnesota National Guard as a Chaplain. I am, of course, most appreciative of your willingness to accept this additional assignment to do what you can to provide for the pastoral care of our brothers and sisters whose needs result in part from their commitment to peace by preparing for the defense of our country.

This letter, then, is to ask you to begin the process leading to a commission in the Minnesota National Guard. It is my understanding that it will take four or more months to complete this work. This will make it possible for you to finish your requirement for your degree at Saint Paul Seminary before having to report for Chaplain duty with the National Guard.

As you know, Father Dennis Schimek is more than willing to help you with the many details connected with your application. No doubt, he will be in touch with you in the near future. If I can be of any assistance, please feel free to telephone or call at the Diocesan Pastoral Center.

With kindest personal greetings, renewed gratitude for your personal dedication, and a request for your prayers, I remain

Fraternally in Christ,

Bishop of Winona

cc: The Reverend Monsignor Roy E. Literski
The Reverend Dennis Schimek

JK000326

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Bishop

PO Box 588
Tel. 507/454-4643

November 25, 1980

The Reverend Monsignor Joseph F. Marbach, J.C.D., Chancellor
Military Ordinariate
1011 First Avenue
New York, N.Y. 10022

Dear Monsignor Marbach,

Greetings in the name of the risen Lord who calls us to minister to the pastoral needs of His pilgrim people!

This letter is to state that the Reverend Jack Lee Krough, a priest of this diocese, has my endorsement and willing approval to serve as a Catholic Chaplain in the Minnesota National Guard.

Father Krough was ordained on June 21, 1976, and has served as an Associate Pastor and high school religion instructor in Austin and Winona. I am pleased that he is willing to make the extra effort to help serve the pastoral needs of the men and women in the National Guard Reserve. They will appreciate, I know, his sound teaching and his great love for the Church, the People of God.

With kindest personal greetings and personal gratitude for the help you will be able to give Father Krough, I remain

Fraternally in Christ,

(Most Rev.) Loras J. Watters
Bishop of Winona

cc: The Reverend Jack Lee Krough

JK000327

JK

HIS EMINENCE
TERENCE CARDINAL COOKE
MILITARY VICAR

MOST REVEREND
JOSEPH T. RYAN, D. D.
COADJUTOR-ARCHBISHOP

MOST REVEREND
WILLIAM J. MORAN, D. D.

MOST REVEREND
JOHN J. O'CONNOR, D. D.
AUXILIARY BISHOPS

Military Vicariate

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
1011 FIRST AVENUE
NEW YORK, NY 10022

TELEPHONE (212) 355-3457

December 1, 1980

MSGR.
JOSEPH F. MARBACH, P. A., J. C. D.

MSGR.
JOSEPH T. DIMINO
CHANCELLORS

MSGR.
JAMES J. MARKHAM, S. T. L., J. C. D.

MSGR.
JOHN P. McCULLAGH

MSGR.
JOHN J. KOWSKY
VICE-CHANCELLORS

IN REPLY PLEASE REFER TO:

Your Excellency:

I wish to thank you for your letter of November 25, in which you grant approval for Father Jack Lee Krough to accept a commission as a chaplain in the National Guard for the state of Minnesota.

We at the Vicariate are most grateful to you for your interest in the spiritual welfare of our military family. We will begin today the process whereby Father Krough will become a National Guard Chaplain within the next several months.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

William J. Moran
+William J. Moran
Auxiliary-Bishop

His Excellency
Most Reverend Loras J. Watters
Bishop of Winona
53 West Sanborn
Winona, Minnesota 55987

JK000328

JK	ECCLESIAS	VAL
TO: CHIEF OF CHAPLAINS	Department of the Army Washington, DC 20310	DATE February 5, 1981
NAME OF APPLICANT Rev. Jack Lee Krough		TELEPHONE NUMBER
ADDRESS (Include ZIP Code) St. Augustine's Church, 405 Fourth Street, N. W., Austin, MN 55912		507 - 452 - 5430

SECTION A - CHAPLAINS

HAS BEEN GRANTED ECCLESIASTICAL ENDORSEMENT FOR:

APPOINTMENT AS A CHAPLAIN RESERVE OFFICER OF THE USAR / USAFR / USNR National Guard

EXTENDED ACTIVE DUTY, DEFINITE TERM (3 YEARS) EXTENDED ACTIVE DUTY, INDEFINITE TERM

APPOINTMENT TO THE REGULAR USA / USAF / USN AUXILIARY CHAPLAIN

THIS ENDORSEMENT CERTIFIES THAT Father Jack Lee Krough

a. IS A FULLY ORDAINED MEMBER OF THE CLERGY OF THE (Name) Roman Catholic Church
(Denomination)

AND WAS ORDAINED AT Winona, Minnesota ON May 21, 19 76
(City, State) (Day, Month)

b. IS PROFESSIONALLY QUALIFIED AND AUTHORIZED TO BE APPOINTED AS A CHAPLAIN, AND RECOMMENDED AS BEING QUALIFIED SPIRITUALLY, MORALLY, INTELLECTUALLY, AND EMOTIONALLY TO REPRESENT OUR DENOMINATION.

c. IS ACTIVELY ENGAGED IN A DENOMINATIONALLY APPROVED RELIGIOUS VOCATION.

d. HAS COMPLETED 4 YEARS OF ACTIVE PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE AFTER COMPLETION OF THE EDUCATIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE CHAPLAINCY AND ORDINATION.

SECTION B - STUDENTS

IS ATTENDING _____ AND WILL, UPON COMPLETION OF THEOLOGICAL STUDIES AND FULFILLMENT OF DENOMINATIONAL REQUIREMENTS, BECOME ELIGIBLE FOR ORDINATION

HAS BEEN GRANTED ECCLESIASTICAL APPROVAL FOR:

CHAPLAIN CANDIDATE PROGRAM, USAFR STAFF SPECIALIST (SEMINARIAN PROGRAM), USAR

THEOLOGICAL STUDENT PROGRAM, USNR

SECTION C - LAY LEADERS

HAS BEEN GRANTED ECCLESIASTICAL APPROVAL FOR:

MILITARY LAY LEADER CIVILIAN LAY LEADER

THIS APPROVAL CERTIFIES THAT _____ IS A LICENSED
(Name)

RECOGNIZED LAY LEADER.

COMMENTS

NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENDORSING AGENCY <u>Military Vicariate, 1011 First Avenue, New York, NY 10022</u>		TELEPHONE NUMBER <u>212 - 355 - 3457</u>
SIGNATURE <u>J. T. Dimino</u>	J. T. Dimino Chancellor	

JK

HIS EMINENCE
TERENCE CARDINAL COOKE
MILITARY VICAR

MOST REVEREND
JOSEPH T. RYAN, D. D.
COADJUTOR-ARCHBISHOP

MOST REVEREND
WILLIAM J. MORAN, D. D.

MOST REVEREND
JOHN J. O'CONNOR, D. D.
AUXILIARY BISHOP

Military Vicariate

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
1011 FIRST AVENUE
NEW YORK, NY 10022

TELEPHONE (212) 355-3457

February 5, 1981

MSGR.
JOSEPH F. MARBACH, P. A., J. C. D.

MSGR.
JOSEPH T. DIMINO
CHANCELLORS

MSGR.
JAMES J. MARKHAM, S. T. L., J. C. D.

MSGR.
JOHN P. McCULLAGH
VICE-CHANCELLORS

IN REPLY PLEASE REFER TO:

Chaplain (Major General) Kermit D. Johnson
Chief of Chaplains
Department of the Army
Washington, DC 20310

Dear Chaplain Johnson:

Father Jack Lee Krough has granted permission by His Excellency, Most Reverend Loras J. Watters, to apply for a commission as a chaplain in the United States Army National Guard.

With this letter I am pleased to grant the ecclesiastical endorsement of the Military Vicariate for Father Krough to apply for and accept a commission as a chaplain in the United States Army National Guard for the State of Minnesota.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

J. T. Dimino
Chancellor

JK000330

JK

HIS EMINENCE
TERENCE CARDINAL COOKE
MILITARY VICAR

MOST REVEREND
JOSEPH T. RYAN, D. D.
COADJUTOR-ARCHBISHOP

MOST REVEREND
WILLIAM J. MORAN, D. D.

MOST REVEREND
JOHN J. O'CONNOR, D. D.
AUXILIARY BISHOP

File please

Military Ordinariate

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

1011 FIRST AVENUE
NEW YORK, NY 10022

TELEPHONE (212) 335-3457

February 5, 1981

MSGR.
JOSEPH F. MARBACH, P. A., J. C. D.

MSGR.
JOSEPH T. DIMINO
CHANCELLORS

MSGR.
JAMES J. MARKHAM, S. T. L., J. C. D.

MSGR.
JOHN P. McCULLAGH
VICE-CHANCELLORS

IN REPLY PLEASE REFER TO:

*file
Fr. Krough*

His Excellency
Most Reverend Loras J. Watters
Bishop of Winona
53 West Sanborn
Winona, Minnesota 55897

Your Excellency:

I am pleased to enclose herewith a copy of the endorsement of the Military Vicariate for Father Jack Lee Krough to apply for a commission as a chaplain in the United States Army National Guard.

This endorsement is being sent today to the Chief of Army Chaplains.

Again let me thank you for granting Father Krough permission to apply for an Army National Guard Chaplaincy.

Faithfully your in Christ,

J. T. Dimino
J. T. Dimino
Chancellor

JK

*Thema
Officialis name
to your list
of advocates
file*

February 20, 1981

The Reverend Jack Krough
Church of St. Stanislaus
Winona, MN

Dear Father Krough,

The grace and peace of God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ be with you and the many of His pilgrim people you are serving in His name!

This letter is to appoint you to the important position of Advocate to our Diocesan Tribunal. Father Philip Gerlach, Officialis, has submitted your name and I am pleased to make this appointment which, of course, is in addition to your present assignments.

Since the other Advocates will be reappointed for another two-year term as of January 1, 1982, your present appointment is for the remainder of this year of 1981. This only because it is much easier to extend all the appointments of our Advocates at the same time.

Both of us know how important the work of our Diocesan Tribunal is. I am pleased to learn that I can count on your conscientious performance of the Advocate's task of preparing and presenting petitions for nullity of marriage that will be assigned to you by the Officialis. Together all of us can rely on the grace of the Holy Spirit to guide the Tribunal in its work.

With kindest personal greetings, renewed gratitude for your priestly commitment, and a request for your prayers, I remain

Faternally in Christ,

Bishop of Winona

cc: Reverend Phillip J. Gerlach, Officialis

JK000332

JK

July 9, 1981

Rev. Jack Krough
Church of St. Stanislaus
625 E. 4th Street
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Father Krough,

As we discussed in our telephone conversation today, we are enclosing a note for \$300 for the money you borrowed from the diocese for your uniforms for the National Guard.

We will appreciate it if you will sign the note and return it. You may sign on either of the lines below Bishop Watters' name. We will send you a copy of the signed note.

We will also appreciate it if you can send us a ~~payback~~ schedule. This is necessary for our cash flow. Thank you, Father.

Sincerely,

Sister Helen Marie Feeney
Director of Finance

HMF:pp
enc.

JK000333

JK

St. Stanislaus Church

625 EAST FOURTH ST.

WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

507-452-5430

15 July 1981

Sr. Helen Marie Feeney
Director of Finance
Diocese of Winona
55 West Sanborn
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Sister Helen Marie:

Enclosed is the note you sent me on July 9 with my signiture. I wish that I would have been able to resolve this obligation by this time, but I have learned already that, when dealing with the military, patience is more than a virtue, it is a necessity.

In order to give you a dependable pay back schedule, independent of government funding, I would like to begin to payback this note at a rate of \$50,00 a month commensing with the first day of September. I hope that this will be acceptable as a means of fulfilling this obligation. Thank-you

Sincerely,


(Rev.) Jack L. Krough

ENCLOSURE

JK000334

JK

February 9, 1982

Rev. Jack Krough
St. Stanislaus Church
625 E. 4th Street
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Father Krough,

Thank you for the check we received in payment of your account.

We are enclosing Note #505 which you signed last February.

We appreciate your taking care of this account.

Sincerely yours,

Sister Helen Marie Feeney
Director of Finance

HMF:pp
enc.

JK000335

JK

OF WINONA

Amount: \$ 300.00

Issued: February 24, 1981

In account with Rev. Jack Krough
which promises to pay to DIOCESE OF WINONA INVESTMENT FUND

within _____ years, with interest 8% per centum per annum
payable semi-annually at Chancery, Winona, Minnesota

Annual payments of \$ _____

P A I D
FEB 9 1982

Approved for DIOCESE OF WINONA Parish

Corporation
Seal

by [Signature] Pres.

[Signature] V. Pres.

_____ Sec'y.

Nº 505

JK

RECEIVED

DATE	INTEREST	DATE	PRINCIPAL	BALANCE DUE
9/9/81			50.00	250.00
10/6/81			50.00	200.00
11/4/81			50.00	150.00
12/8/81			50.00	100.00
1/7/82			50.00	50.00
2/9/82			50.00	- 0 -

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Bishop

PO Box 588
Tel. 507/454-4643


LORAS JOSEPH

By the Providence of God and the Favor of the Holy See

BISHOP OF WINONA

In accord with Canons 1573, 1586 and 1589, C.I.C., I
hereby appoint The Reverend Jack L. Krough, B.A., M. Div., as
Assodicate Judge of the Matrimonial Tribunal of the Diocese of
Winona.

Given at Winona this 3rd day of October, 1983.


Bishop of Winona


Chancellor

JK000338

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Bishop

PO Box 588
Tel. 507/454-4643

May 14, 1985

Rev. Jack Krough
St. Stanislaus Church
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Father Krough,

"Thus, since all form one presbytery and one family around him as father, the bishop sees that his priests, while keeping a strong sense of universality, continually cultivate in a special way a feeling for the diocese. As a good head of the household, with prudent planning and impartial zeal for the good of souls, he assigns priests to various sacred ministries, making use of that fitting freedom permitted by law" (Directory on the Pastoral Ministry of Bishops, p. 106).

We will experience again "in a special way a feeling for the diocese" as we concelebrate the Mass of Ordination for Kevin Connolly, Timothy Hodapp, and John Sauer on June 19th. I was all the more conscious of our shared pastoral love for God's pilgrim people in this diocese as I discussed the important aspects of the many pastoral assignments which will be announced in the parishes this May 18-19th weekend and in the June issue of THE COURIER. Once I was filled with gratitude that, in the words of the Directory, "Pastors are the bishop's co-workers, taking his place and representing him in their parish community, thus contributing a great deal toward building up the whole Body of Christ".

With heartfelt thanks for your past collaboration and effective leadership, I now wish to appoint you to share in a new pastoral setting the bishop's manifold ministry as teacher, priest and pastor, along with all the implications of our vocation.

The Lord's Ascension relates this present appointment to the mission Jesus mandated to the Eleven before He was taken into heaven. With faith and humility, I am pleased to appoint you to Lourdes High School, Rochester, and to some pastoral responsibilities at St. Pius X Parish there while continuing your chaplaincy work with the Minnesota Unit of the National Guard. "Go...and teach!"

In making this appointment, I assure you of my prayers, personal support and fraternal love. While I would like to make this letter more personal by citing specific instances of your unselfish response to the pastoral needs of your people, please understand that I cannot if I am to write to all the priests in time for them to announce their July 2, 1985, transfers on this May 18-19th weekend and encourage their people to welcome and cooperate with their successors. I am enclosing the usual resignation form which I kindly ask you to sign and return. The financial report form which Father Schmitz will send you will be for 11 months with the understanding that the new Pastor will complete it. It would help your successor a great deal if the trustees or someone in your parish is involved with you in preparing this interim report.

With kindest personal greetings, renewed gratitude for your priestly commitment, and a request for your prayers, I remain,

Fraternally in Christ,

Bishop of Winona

CC: Father Thomas J. Hargesheimer

JK000339

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

COPY

Office of the
Bishop

PO Box 508
Tel. 507/454-4643

May 9, 1990

Rev. Jack L. Krough
St. Pius X Church
1315 Twelfth Avenue N.W.
Rochester, MN 55901

Dear Jack,

It is with a deep sense of appreciation and confidence that I appoint you for a term of six years as pastor of All Saints Church, New Richland, and St. Joseph Church, Waldorf, effective June 29, 1990.

Rev. Joseph Mountain, dean of the Mankato Deanery, will act as my delegate in receiving your Profession of Faith. Please contact him as soon as possible concerning your formal installation as pastor. I want the people to whom you are sent as pastor to celebrate these new beginnings with you and to have an opportunity to welcome you in a prayerful and public way.

Jack, as you accept your first pastorate in the service of our diocesan Church, I want to take this opportunity to thank you for the marvelous contributions you have made to Catholic secondary education in our diocese. Time and again people from the Lourdes community have told me of their appreciation for your good work there. You have been a good influence on our young people and have been a model teacher. I also appreciate the assistance you have given at St. Pius X parish during your stay at Lourdes.

The People of God are good. There are many ways in which they show us their affection and support. You come among them as one who serves, charged with the responsibility of pastoral leadership. If you ever need me for anything, please do not hesitate to call. The diocesan curia and support staff at the Pastoral Center in Winona stand ready to assist you in your many and varied responsibilities. Furthermore, I encourage you to be an active collaborator with your brother priests in the meetings and the activities of the Mankato Deanery.

As St. Paul assured Timothy in his second letter to him (1:7), the "Spirit God has given us is no cowardly spirit, but rather one that makes us strong, loving and wise." My prayer goes with you that the Holy Spirit will truly inspire and animate this new service of pastoral love which I entrust to you.

Your grateful brother in the Lord,

Most Reverend John G. Vlazny
Bishop of Winona

cc: Rev. Gerald Mahon Rev. Clayton Haberman
 Rev. Donald Schmitz Rev. Thomas Hargesheimer
 Rev. Joseph Mountain Mr. Dennis Nigon

JK000340

JK

Profession of Faith

I, Jack L. Krough, with firm faith believe and profess everything that is contained in the symbol of faith: namely,

I believe in one God, the Father, the Almighty, maker of heaven and earth, of all that is seen and unseen. I believe in one Lord, Jesus Christ, the only Son of God, eternally begotten of the Father, God from God, Light from Light, true God from true God, begotten, not made, one in Being with the Father. Through him all things were made. For us men and for our salvation he came down from heaven: By the power of the Holy Spirit, he was born of the Virgin Mary, and became man. For our sake he was crucified under Pontius Pilate; he suffered, died and was buried. On the third day he rose again in fulfillment of the Scriptures; he ascended into heaven and is seated at the right hand of the Father. He will come again in glory to judge the living and the dead, and his kingdom will have no end. I believe in the Holy Spirit, the Lord, the giver of life, who proceeds from the Father and the Son. With the Father and the Son he is worshiped and glorified. He has spoken through the Prophets. I believe in the one holy catholic and apostolic church. I acknowledge one baptism for the forgiveness of sins. I look for the resurrection of the dead, and the life of the world to come. Amen.

With firm faith I believe as well everything contained in God's word, written or handed down in tradition and proposed by the church -- whether in solemn judgment or in the ordinary and universal magisterium -- as divinely revealed and calling for the faith.

I also firmly accept and hold each and every thing that is proposed by that same church definitively with regard to teaching concerning faith or morals.

What is more, I adhere with religious ^{obsequium} submission of will and intellect to the teachings which either the Roman pontiff or the college of bishops enunciate when they exercise the authentic magisterium even if they proclaim those teachings in an act that is not definitive.

Oath of Fidelity On Assuming an Office To Be Exercised in The Name of the Church

I, Jack L. Krough, on assuming the office of Pastor promise that I shall always preserve communion with the Catholic Church whether in the words I speak or in the way I act.

With great care and fidelity I shall carry out the responsibilities by which I am bound in relation both to the universal church and to the particular church in which I am called to exercise my service according to the requirements of the law.

In carrying out my charge, which is committed to me in the name of the church, I shall preserve the deposit of faith in its entirety, hand it on faithfully and make it shine forth. As a result, whatsoever teachings are contrary I shall shun.

I shall follow and foster the common discipline of the whole church and shall look after the observance of all ecclesiastical laws, especially those which are contained in the Code of Canon Law.

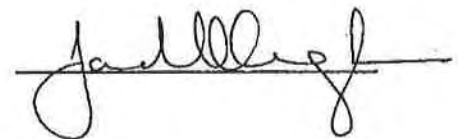
With Christian obedience I shall associate myself with what is expressed by the holy shepherds as authentic doctors and teachers of the faith or established by them as the church's rulers. And I shall faithfully assist diocesan bishops so that apostolic activity, to be exercised by the mandate and in the name of the church, is carried out in the communion of the same church.

May God help me in this way and the holy Gospels of God which I touch with my hands.

(Seal)

ATTEST:

Joseph Mountain
Ordinary of Winona (Delegate)



Date 3 October 1990

JK000341

JK

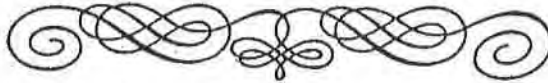
SEXUAL MISCONDUCT POLICY
OF THE
DIOCESE OF WINONA

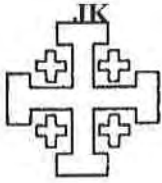
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF RECEIPT

I hereby acknowledge that I have received a copy of the Sexual Misconduct Policy of the Diocese of Winona and that I have read it, understand its means, and agree to conduct myself in accordance with the Policy.

Date: 21 March 1993

Signed: Rev. J. J. J. J.





CHURCH OF ALL SAINTS

P.O. BOX 185
NEW RICHLAND, MN 56072
(507) 465-8217

26 July 1993

Most Reverend John Vlazny, D.D.
Bishop of Winona
P.O. Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Bishop:

Thank you for your letter of 12 July. I spent the last two weeks at Camp Ripley serving the men and women of the National Guard, so the letter was waiting for me when I got home Saturday.

I have been and continue to be thankful for your compassionate ministry during these difficult months. Your encouragement helped to sustain me during the evaluative process and the time of healing I believe has begun.

Be assured that I intend to follow through on the recommendations offered by St. Luke's. As you are aware, I have discussed the matter with Rick Thompson and I have also shared the results with my spiritual director. The first sentence of this Sunday's epistle reminded me that God can make even such a sad event work for the good.

I fear that I seem disingenuous in my inability to remember the victim's name. All I can do is assure you of my desire to comply with your request, but, at least at the present, I cannot come up with a name despite looking at several yearbooks and parish directories. Hopefully, counseling will help to unlock this memory.

It has been about three months since you brought this matter to my attention. Since that afternoon I have traveled paths I would not have chosen and confronted truths that have been difficult to face, but I have also been graced by God and gifted with the support of friends. And I have found that in the end my prayer remains the same: Thy will be done.

God bless your ministry,

Rev. Jack L. Krough

JK000055

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Bishop

PO Box 5118
Tel. 507/454-4641

January 23, 1995

Reverend Jack L. Krough
All Saints Church
P.O. Box 185
New Richland, Minnesota 56072

Dear Jack,

One of my important responsibilities as Bishop of this diocese is to grant the imprimatur on occasion for publications that come out of Saint Mary's Press or other independent publishers in our diocese. Father William Becker has taken over the responsibility of coordinating these projects and I am most pleased that you are willing to assist him in this important service to the larger church community.

Therefore, I hereby appoint you a diocesan censor of books and periodicals of Catholic materials for publication, effective immediately. I know that you already have many and diverse responsibilities and I am most grateful to you for your willingness to assist in this sensitive and timely responsibility. I am grateful to Monsignor William Magee and Monsignor Roy Literski who have performed this service for our diocese over many years. You, Father William Becker and Father Timothy Reker will be most worthy successors for them and most welcome collaborators for me. God bless.

Your brother in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazny

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazny
Bishop of Winona

JGV:jm

cc: Reverend Gerald A. Mahon
Reverend William M. Becker
Reverend John M. Kunz
Mr. Lawrence Blake

JK000343

JK

DIocese of Winona
55 WEST LANSING STREET
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55908

Office of the
Bishop

PO Box 589
Tel. 507/565-3111

March 8, 1996

Reverend Jack L. Krough
All Saints Church
P.O. Box 185
New Richland, Minnesota 56072

Dear Father Krough,

Thank you very much for your assistance and the cooperation of your people in our efforts to discern the readiness of the parishes of All Saints, New Richland, and Saint Joseph, Waldorf, to receive pastoral leadership from a parish director and priest-moderator, effective July 1, 1996. As you know, our diocesan church is seeking to implement this new form of pastoral service in nine or ten situations across the diocese over the next few years. We had hoped to be able to do this in 1996 in two situations, similar to our good experience last year.

After receiving the reports of your dean, Father John Kunz, and our Chancellor/Director of Diocesan Planning, Mr. John Vitek, and consulting with priests who might be available to offer pastoral care, I have determined that the situation is not yet ripe for me to make these appointments. I am sorry about that because I did have confidence in the lay leadership of the parish and available personnel for service that this would be an excellent direction to pursue. With the retirement of four priests and the death of one active pastor, these are not the easiest times for our priests and I do want to welcome the laity in leadership whenever and wherever feasible. Perhaps New Richland and Waldorf will be ready next time.

The Clergy Assignments Committee will be advising me about the availability of priests for the pastorate of the two parishes when you leave this summer. I hope to make an appointment this spring. I thank you for the good pastoral care you have given the people there for six years. Please pray for the guidance of the Holy Spirit so that the people of all 122 parish communities will be well served and share some sense of responsibility for ministry across the diocese. God bless.

Your brother in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazonis

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazonis
Bishop of Winona

JGV:jm

cc: Reverend John M. Kunz
Mr. John M. Vitek
Reverend Gerald A. Mahon
Reverend Thomas J. Jennings
Reverend Richard M. Colletti

JK000344

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55907

Office of the
Bishop

PO Box 508
Tel. 507/454 4643

May 16, 1996

Reverend Jack L. Krough
All Saints Church
P.O. Box 185
New Richland, Minnesota 56072

Dear Jack,

With today's feast of the Lord's Ascension, the church turns our attention to the guidance and companionship of the Holy Spirit in our lives and in our shared mission. As we prepare our hearts for the feast of Pentecost during the next nine days, I shall be remembering you in a special way in appreciation of our privileged partnership in giving God's people across southern Minnesota a shepherd's care.

Your first pastorate these past six years at All Saint's Church in New Richland and Saint Joseph's Church, in Waldorf has been a real blessing for your parishioners and for me. I am grateful that you have also been willing to give assistance in our diocesan AIDS ministry and in reviewing catechetical materials on my behalf for Saint Mary's Press. With your departure from New Richland and Waldorf, I am now asking you to accept a new pastorate

It gives me great pleasure to appoint you for a term of six years as Pastor of Saint Edward's Church, Austin, and Our Lady of Loretto Church, Brownsdale, effective July 1, 1996. You will be serving there as a partner with your brother priests in the Austin-Albert Lea deanery. I would ask that you arrange for your installation with Father Thomas Jennings, the dean, when it is mutually convenient after your arrival. I believe it is very important for us to celebrate these new beginnings of pastoral leadership with the people in a public and prayerful way. I am also asking you to renew your Profession of Faith at that time.

Here at the Pastoral Center the curia, staff and I stand ready to respond to your personal and pastoral needs. We continue our work of diocesan planning. Your participation and wisdom are very important to me. As I give you this new call to pastoral leadership in the name of the church, I also gratefully acknowledge the loving and generous service which has been the hallmark of your priestly ministry in the past. God bless.

Your brother in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazonis

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazonis
Bishop of Winona

JGV/jm

cc: Reverend Gerald A. Mahon
Mr. John M. Vitek
Reverend Thomas J. Jennings

JK000345

JK

I, Reverend Jack L. Krough, with firm faith believe and profess everything that is contained in the symbol of faith, namely:

I believe in one God, the Father, the Almighty, maker of heaven and earth, of all that is seen and unseen. I believe in one Lord, Jesus Christ, the only Son of God, eternally begotten of the Father, God from God, Light from Light, true God from true God, begotten, not made, one in Being with the Father. Through him all things were made. For us men and for our salvation he came down from heaven: By the power of the Holy Spirit he was born of the Virgin Mary, and became man. For our sake he was crucified under Pontius Pilate: he suffered, died and was buried. On the third day he rose again in fulfillment of the Scriptures; he ascended into heaven and is seated at the right hand of the Father. He will come again in glory to judge the living and the dead, and his kingdom will have no end. I believe in the Holy Spirit, the Lord, the giver of life, who proceeds from the Father and the Son. With the Father and the Son he is worshiped and glorified. He has spoken through the Prophets. I believe in the one, holy, Catholic and apostolic Church. I acknowledge one baptism for the forgiveness of sins. I look for the resurrection of the dead, and the life of the world to come. Amen.

With firm faith I also believe everything contained in God's word, written or handed down in tradition and proposed by the Church, whether by way of solemn judgment or through the ordinary and universal magisterium, as divinely revealed and calling for the faith.

I also firmly accept and hold each and everything that is proposed definitively by the Church regarding teaching on faith and morals.

Moreover, I adhere with religious submission of will and intellect to the teachings which either the Roman Pontiff or the college of bishops enunciate when they exercise the authentic magisterium, even if they proclaim those teachings by an act that is not definitive.

Oath of Fidelity on Assuming an Office to be Exercised in the Name of the Church

I, Reverend Jack L. Krough, in assuming the office of Pastor, promise that both in my words and in my conduct I shall always preserve communion with the Catholic Church.

I shall carry out with greatest care and fidelity the duties incumbent on me toward both the universal Church and the particular Church in which, according to the provisions of the law, I have been called to exercise my service.

In fulfilling the charge intrusted to me in the name of the Church, I shall hold fast to the deposit of faith in its entirety, I shall faithfully hand it on and explain it, and I shall avoid any teachings opposed to that faith.

I shall follow and foster the common discipline of the whole Church and I shall observe all ecclesiastical laws, especially those which are contained in the Code of Canon Law.

In Christian obedience I shall unite myself with what is declared by the bishops as authentic doctors and teachers of the faith or established by them as those responsible for the governance of the Church; I shall also faithfully assist the diocesan bishops, in order that the apostolic activity exercised in the name and by mandate of the Church may be carried out in the communion of the same Church.

So help me God, and God's holy Gospels, on which I place my hand.

(Seal)



ATTEST:

Thomas J. Jennings
Ordinary of Winona (Delegate)

Date: August 25, 1996

JK

CHURCH OF ST. EDWARD

2000 West Oakland Avenue • Austin, Minnesota 55912-1599
Phone 507-433-1841

30 October 1996

Most Reverend John G Vlazny
Bishop of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Bishop Vlazny:

During our recent meeting at Lake Okoboji, I struggled to find the proper response to the painful and often unfair criticisms and complaints. A combination of confusion and fear kept me silent when perhaps I should have offered another perspective to the ministry I have experienced from you and other diocesan leaders. I am sorry for whatever pain my silence caused.

Had I had the courage I would have wanted to share a little of my story. Unlike some who spoke at Okoboji, for me the evaluation at St Luke's Institute initiated a process of reflection and growth that continues still. I doubt I would have risked beginning the spiritual direction and counseling without the support I felt from you and the encouragement I received from Rick Thomson. No, I did not want to go to St Luke's, but I am grateful for all that has happened since, hard as it has sometimes been.

If appropriate, I would like to sit down with you soon and share a little of the story of the past three and a half years. My spiritual director concurs in this. I am grateful for what God's grace has been doing in my life, though the pilgrimage continues to offer new and often difficult challenges.

Again thank you for your ministry to me. I am sorry that I did not stand up to be counted when it would have meant more.

Fraternally,



Rev Jack L Krough

JK000056

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

Office of the Bishop

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

October 31, 1996

Reverend Jack L. Krough
Saint Edward Church
2000 Oakland Avenue, W
Austin, Minnesota 55912

Dear Jack,

You are a remarkable man and an inspiring brother priest. Thanks so very much for your thoughtful and kind letter of October 30. Frankly, I am delighted that you did not choose to speak up at Okoboji. Your quiet support will undoubtedly be more effective in helping us calm the troubled waters. I want you to know that I am most grateful that you are a brother priest in the service of this local church. You cause me no pain whatsoever. In fact, you are one of the great sources of my own strength and joy in ministry.

Jack, I would be delighted to visit with you over your journey these past three and one-half years. Getting together in the immediate future may not be the easiest task, but I am confident that we can find some time in late November or early December. Thanks for caring and also thanks for accepting the call to Austin and Brownsdale with so much trust and pastoral zeal. God bless.

Your brother in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazonis

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazonis
Bishop of Winona

JGV/jm

JK000057

JK

**INVESTIGATION REPORT and FINDINGS
OF ALLEGED SEXUAL MISCONDUCT
Diocese of Winona**

Re: Krough

Complainant Information

Complainant:
Reported by:
Date of Interview: July 7, 1997
Home address:

Office Address:

Home Telephone: Unknown
Office Telephone:
Brief Biographical:

was raised in Minnesota. He attended High School in and was a member of the graduating class of . His parents, now retired, reside in Minnesota. He is approximately years of age, unmarried. He is currently with His appearance is well-groomed, and he appears to be in good health.

He recently

He indicated that he felt badly about that. This may have been/be a motivating factor in his desire to now bring his own alleged abuse to the attention of the diocese.

Alleged Perpetrator's Information

Person accused of misconduct: Rev. Jack Lee Krough, Date of Birth: August 11, 1949
Ordained May 21, 1976 at Winona
Current appointment: Pastor, Church of St. Edward, Austin
Pastor, Our Lady of Loretto, Brownsdale
Current address: 2000 Oakland Avenue West
Austin, Minnesota 55912-1599
Current telephone: 507-433-1841
Appointment(s) at time of alleged misconduct: St. Augustine, Austin, June 11, 1976 - June 22, 1980
Instructor, Cotter High School, with residence at St. Stan's, Winona, June 23, 1980 - July 1, 1985

JK

Date of Response
to allegations: July 18, 1997
Persons Present: Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Vicar General
John M. Vitek, Chancellor
Location of Meeting: St. Edward's Church, Austin
Time of Meeting: 1:00 p.m. -2:00 p.m., approximately
Nature of Allegation: Sexual Misconduct: Child Sexual Abuse

Statement of Alleged Victim and Alleged Perpetrator's Response (in bold)

Preliminary Questions

Do you recognize the person in this photograph? **YES**

Do you recall the persons name?

Are you saying you do/don't recall **I DO RECALL HIM**

If you recall what do you recall about your relationship with
ABSOLUTELY, WON'T DENY WHAT HAPPENED

1. alleges that when he was a at High School in
he met Fr. Jack Krough who was a Religion Teacher at and the faculty director of
the school's photo club. He alleges that the first incidence of inappropriateness demonstrated by
Fr. Krough took place in the school's darkroom. Fr. Krough and were working on a
photography project and they began "kidding around." At some point "they wagered some sort
of bet about pissing in a bucket" sort of daring one another to urinate in a bucket.
recalls that he began urinating into a bucket and while doing so Fr. Krough "grabbed []
penis while he urinated." **THIS IS ALL TRUE**

Do you recall being in the school's darkroom with
Do you recall this incident or something to this effect?
Do you recall ever touching exposed penis?

2. A second series of incidences involved Fr. Krough inviting over
to St. Augustine's rectory to visit. On many occasions their visits would involve some sort of
playful wrestling matches. Often, during such wrestling, Fr. Krough would "grab []
crotch." This grabbing was on top of the clothing. These visits occurred about every other week
for the duration of the school year. **THIS IS TRUE**

Do you recall having coming to visit you in the rectory at St. Augustine's Church in
Austin?

Do you recall visiting with him in your private/personal area of the rectory?
 Do you recall ever wrestling with _____ or something to that effect?
 Do you recall ever grabbing _____ crotch during these wrestling matches or at any other time during your visits?

3. A third series of incidences occurred in the school's darkroom where _____ and Fr. Krough would work together on photographic projects. Fr. Krough would "make [_____ sit in his lap while looking at pictures." _____ recalls that he could feel Fr. Krough had an erection, but Fr. Krough did not expose his penis during these incidences. He also recalls that Fr. Krough would "touch him" on the legs and upper body in a way that made uncomfortable. These occurrences were weekly initially. On many of these occasions Fr. Krough would confide in _____ about personal and professional matters, he would breakdown emotionally, often crying, and _____ felt as though Fr. Krough was placing the onus on him to "comfort him and support him." **DON'T RECALL, BUT DON'T DENY**

Do you recall ever working with or being present with _____ in the school's darkroom?
YES

Do you recall ever looking at photographs with _____ while in the darkroom? **YES**

Do you recall ever asking _____ to or having _____ sit on your lap while looking at pictures in the darkroom? **DON'T RECALL, BUT DON'T DENY**

Do you recall ever touching _____ legs or his upper body? **YES**

Do you recall if you ever became sexually excited (erect penis) while _____ sat on your lap?
DON'T RECALL

4. A fourth incidence involved _____ and another male student, [sic.], who was also one of the school photographers. Fr. Krough asked them to go with him to the State Basketball tournament in St. Paul to take photographs of the team. This incidence occurred during _____ year. They stayed at a hotel in downtown St. Paul. He recalls that he and _____ drew straws to see who would have to share a bed with Fr. Krough since there was one double bed and one single bed. _____ ended up sharing the bed with Fr. Krough. _____ recalls that in the middle of the night Fr. Krough woke him up and began accusing him of "grabbing [Fr. Krough's] genitals." For about an hour Fr. Krough continued a conversation with _____ that "freaked him out." He recalls that when he denied "grabbing Frs. Genitals" Fr. Krough "pulled down _____ underwear and grabbed his genitals" as if to demonstrate. He recalls that Fr. Krough continued to carry on a conversation about the "special relationship" the two of them had and how now it had progressed to a "sexual relationship." He recalls that Fr. Krough told _____ that because of this he was now going to have to "kill himself." They continued to talk and _____ as though he was responsible for consoling Fr. Krough.

Do you recall ever taking [redacted] or being with [redacted] at the State Basketball Tournament in St. Paul? YES

Do you recall staying in the same hotel room with [redacted] Was another student present? YES

Do you recall if you slept in the same bed as [redacted] YES

Do you recall the incident of accusing [redacted] of grabbing your genitals? DON'T RECALL

Do you recall ever pulling down [redacted] underwear and grabbing [redacted] genitals while in the same bed on this occasion? DON'T RECALL

Do you recall ever saying to him that your relationship had now progressed to a "sexual relationship" or something to that effect? DON'T RECALL

Do you recall telling [redacted] that because of this sexual relationship you would have to kill yourself or something to that effect?

I RECALL SOME SORT OF EROTIC ACTIVITY, MAYBE HUGGING OR TOUCHING POSSIBLY

5. A fifth series of incidences occurred after Fr. Krough left Austin and was transferred to St. Stan's Church, Winona. At this time [redacted] was a [redacted] in high school. [redacted] recalls that Fr. Krough would invite him to come for visits on weekends. On 3 or 4 occasions, [redacted] took the bus from Austin to Winona to visit Fr. Krough for the weekend. On the first visit, which was in the very early Fall, Fr. Krough wanted [redacted] to sleep in his bed. [redacted] recalls that he did sleep in Fr. Krough's bed. Fr. Krough told [redacted] that he "wanted to masturbate" [redacted] recalls that he said "no." He could see that Fr. Krough had an erection through his underwear. On the second and third weekend visits to Winona, [redacted] slept in Fr. Krough's bed again and on these occasions Fr. Krough did masturbate him to the point of ejaculation. He recalls that Fr. Krough also did two other things during these visits that he found to be "strange." First, on one occasion, Fr. Krough told him that he needed to "check to see if [redacted] legs were growing symmetrically." He asked [redacted] to take off his pants and Fr. Krough would use his hands like calipers of sort to measure both thighs. On another occasion, Fr. Krough told [redacted] that he wanted to see what the shadow lines of the body might be like if he were to photograph [redacted] nude. He asked [redacted] to take off his shirt, then his pants, then to lower his underwear. [redacted] did so and Fr. Krough watched. There was no physical touch involved in this incidence.

Do you recall ever having sit you in Winona after you left Austin? **YES**

Do you recall how frequent those visits were? **THINKS A COUPLE OF TIMES**

Do you recall ever having sleep in your bed during these visits? **YES**

Do you recall ever telling hat you would like to masturbate him? **YES**

Do you recall ever hearing tell you "no"? **YES**

Do you recall ever masturbating during any of his visits? **YES, ONCE**

Do you recall ever telling that you would like to observe the shadow lines of his body to see what it would be like to photograph him nude or something to that effect?
SOUNDS TRUE

Do you recall ever asking to take off his shirt? His pants? His underwear? **YES**

Do you recall ever discussing the development of legs or something to that effect and then asking him to take off his pants so you could measure the size of his thighs?
DON'T RECALL

Do you recall ever using your hands to measure the size of thighs, like calipers?
DON'T RECALL, BUT DO NOT DENY

6. A sixth incident involved a trip to Chicago with Fr. Krough during the summer after year. He recalls that they stayed at a hotel on Michigan Avenue. On this trip Fr. Krough confided in that he had cancer. During the week long trip, Fr. Krough, he recalls, would "fondle genitals." There was rubbing and he recalls that Fr. Krough tried kissing him.

Do you recall ever going on a trip to Chicago with ? **YES**

Do you recall the purpose of the trip? **JUST A TRIP, TO DO PHOTOGRAPHY AND VISIT MUSEUMS**

Do you recall at anytime during that trip touching, fondling or rubbing genitals?
DON'T RECALL

Do you recall ever trying to kiss **DON'T RECALL**

7. Shortly after the Chicago trip, Fr. Krough came to Austin to meet recalls attempting to hide from him, to avoid him. Somehow Fr. Krough found him

and they ended up talking about their relationship. told Fr. Krough that he wanted their relationship to end. He recalls that they sat at the Technical Institute parking lot in Fr. Krough's car. The conversation was confrontational, but it was the last time they met in person. He recalls that Fr. Krough continued to call him and told him not to tell anyone about their sexual relationship.

Do you recall going to Austin to visit to discuss your relationship? YES

Do you recall discussing your relationship with YES

Do you recall telling you that he wanted your relationship to end? YES

Do you recall telling to not tell anyone about your sexual relationship? DON'T RECALL, PROBABLY WOULD HAVE

DID SEE HIM TWO OR THREE TIMES AFTER THIS INCIDENT. ONCE AT HIS APARTMENT IN . WHILE HE WAS AT THE COMMUNITY COLLEGE. STAYED AT FR. KROUGH'S APARTMENT IN WINONA ON ONE OCCASION MAYBE BETWEEN 1983-1985. DID SEE ON THE STREET OF AT ONE TIME, THEY TALKED ABOUT GETTING TOGETHER BUT THEY DID NOT DO SO.

8. Early in year of high school, Fr. Krough told him that he felt "bad about having raped . Fr. Krough told that he had confessed his sins to God, that God has forgiven him, and now needed to forgive Fr. Krough. He, again, told not to tell anyone, and that he can't report it because the statutes of limitations had run out.

Do you recall ever telling hat you felt bad about raping him? NO

Do you recall ever telling that you had confessed your sins to God, that God had forgiven you, and that now needed to forgive you too or something to that effect? POSSIBLY

Do you recall telling that he was not to tell anyone about your relationship? DON'T RECALL

Do you recall telling that he can't report your relationship because the statutes of limitations had run out? DON'T RECALL, DOESN'T SOUND LIKE SOMETHING I WOULD SAY

Is there anything else you would like to say that might be relevant to the investigation of these

JK

allegations?

When informed that one of three witnesses told the investigator that Fr. Krough had also touched him inappropriately and asked whether he knew who this might be, Fr. Krough replied:
RECALL FONDLING OF GENITAL AREA WHILE IN HIS CAR (Note: This is consistent with witnesses statement).

Question asked of Fr. Krough by Fr. Hoepfner, not in the presence of John Vitek:

When asked by Fr. Hoepfner if there are any other persons with whom Fr. Krough has been involved with in an inappropriate, sexual or physical way, Fr. Krough replied:
NO, IT WAS JUST THESE TWO. THERE ARE NO OTHERS

Relevant Witness Testimony

_____ residing in _____, Minnesota. _____ stated that _____ was present in the hotel room during the incident at the State Basketball Tournament in St. Paul. _____ could not recall having been there nor could he recall anything that he deemed inappropriate between Fr. Krough and _____. _____ recalled that Fr. Krough seemed to spend more time with _____ than with the other photographers, but he did not have any knowledge of or reason to believe that Fr. Krough was engaged in anything inappropriate with _____. He did indicate that he was "not surprised" to hear of this accusation, but had nothing to base that on.

_____ currently residing at _____ called speaking with _____ once while in high school about Fr. Krough. He recalled that _____ said something to the effect "Fr. Krough was a freak and made sexual advances on him." _____ did not recall such a conversation. He also indicated that he did not have any knowledge of or reason to believe that Fr. Krough was engaged in anything inappropriate with _____. He did, however, testify that Fr. Krough had touched him and/or acted in a sexual way with him on two occasions. On one occasion, Fr. Krough took to a photo exhibit at an art center in Minneapolis. On the way back _____ was coughing and Fr. Krough told him to lay down on the seat with his head in or near Fr. Krough's lap. Fr. Krough undid _____ shirt buttons and rubbed and patted _____ chest reaching low but not quite touching his genital area, but his lower abdomen, pubic area. _____ felt uncomfortable. On a second occasion, Fr. Krough invited _____ to the rectory at St. Augustine's Church in Austin, sometime during _____ year. Fr. Krough told _____ he was sore and that _____ would know where he was sore. Fr. Krough took _____ into his bedroom and had _____ lay on his bed. Fr. Krough had _____ take off his shirt and Fr. Krough massaged _____ upper body. Fr. Krough told _____ to take off his pants so that "I can show you where I am sore so you can massage me." _____ told Fr. Krough that he was not comfortable with that and he left.

currently residing in believed he could be a possible victim. had no direct experiences of inappropriate touch by Fr. Krough. He said Fr. Krough would hug him a lot and confide personal information in him, but never made any sexual advances on him. In recent conversations with with whom he remains friends, they talked about their curiosity about Fr. Krough and wondered about his possible inappropriateness with other boys in the photographers group. indicated, however, that old him that he recalled seeing a photograph which Fr. Krough had taken of in nothing but his brief underwear.

Requests of Alleged Victim

1. would like to have a victim-advocate appointed to him. An advocate was appointed out of the Archdiocese of St. Paul/Minneapolis.
2. He would like to see Fr. Krough placed in treatment where his predatory problems can be addressed.
3. He believes he may need counseling to deal with his own mental/psychological health. He expressed some concern about the overwhelming nature of these memories and that he got drunk after reporting this matter to the diocese on June 30, 1997. He recalls thinking that he could lose his job if he doesn't pull himself together.
4. He wishes to be updated on what happens to Fr. Krough.

Other Relevant Information

Information in the accused's personnel file indicates that Fr. Krough had gone to St. Luke's Institute, Maryland in May 1993 for assessment concerning an allegation that he had photographed a nude boy while he was assigned to Pacelli High School. Fr. Krough had apparently admitted to doing so and agreed to undergo assessment. St. Luke's found no reason for concern for his reassignment to ministry following the assessment. Fr. Krough contended that it was a single isolated incident and he could not recall who the victim was.

Relevant Definitions of the Criminal Sexual Conduct Code

The Minnesota Criminal Sexual Conduct Code 609.341, offers the following definitions:

Subd.5. defines "intimate parts" as "the primary genital area, groin, inner thigh, buttocks, or breast of a human being.

Subd. 10. defines a person in the "position of authority" to "include but is not limited to any person who is a parent or acting in the place of a parent and charged with any of a parent's rights, duties or responsibilities to a child, or a person who is charged with any duty or responsibility for the health, welfare, or supervision of a child, either independently or through another, no matter how brief, at the time of the act."

Subd. 11 (a) defines "sexual contact" as "any of the following acts committed without the complainant's consent, except in those cases where consent is not a defense, and committed with sexual or aggressive intent:" (I) the intentional touching by the actor of the complainant's intimate parts, . . . or (iii) the touching by another of the complainant's intimate parts effected by coercion or the use of a position of authority, or (iv) in any of the cases above, the touching of the clothing covering the immediate area of the intimate parts.

Summary of Findings

Fr. Krough admits to or, at least, does not deny having been involved with _____ in a sexual way, including bare genital touch of _____ on multiple occasions. It appears that such behaviors, as described by the complainant and admitted to by the accused, constitute sexual misconduct as defined under section 4.3 of the Sexual Misconduct Policy of the Diocese of Winona. It appears that such involvement was intentional and with sexual intent. These incidences began when _____ was a _____ at Pacelli High School, Austin, Minnesota, when _____ was approximately _____ of age. The last occurrence was when _____ was approximately _____ of age.

Investigator: Mr. John M. Vitek, Chancellor
Diocese of Winona
P.O. Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987

Report Prepared by: Mr. John M. Vitek, Chancellor
Report Prepared on: August 7, 1997

JK

Nelson Tr

0000284
Fax (507) 452-2877

ITINERARY INVOICE
PAGE NO. 1
PNR: 1P--GUUR50

DIOCESE OF WINONA
ATTENTION JANICE
P.O. BOX 508
WINONA MN 55987

KROUGH/JACK.FR

AGENT		CONTACT		CUSTOMER NO.	ACCOUNT NO.	DATE	
RENEE					DIOCES	17 JUL 97	
DAY	DATE	CITY	AIRPORT	TIME	CARRIER	FLIGHT CLASS STATUS	SERVICE AMOUNT

A	SU 20JUL	LV ROCHESTER MINN	100P	NORTHWEST	3601F	OK	
		AR MINNEAPOLIS/STPAUL	135P				OSTOP JET
		NWA AIRLINK REGIONAL	JET OP	BY MESABA AVIATION			
			SEAT	02-C	**BOARDING PASS ISSUED**		
				KROUGH/JACK.FR			

A	SU 20JUL	LV MINNEAPOLIS/STPAUL	230P	NORTHWEST	186F	OK	
		AR WASH/NATIONAL	547P				OSTOP JET
			SEAT	01-C	**BOARDING PASS ISSUED**		
				KROUGH/JACK.FR			

TICKET NUMBER(S): 0121534763659

AIR FARE	464.55
TAX	52.45
TOTAL AIR FARE	517.00
AMOUNT DUE	517.00

PASSENGERS OVER AGE 17 MUST HAVE APPROVED PHOTO ID SUCH AS A VALID DRIVERS LICENSE. THOSE WITHOUT LICENSE MUST PRESENT TWO FORMS OF ID ONE OF WHICH MUST BE GOVERNMENT ISSUED SUCH AS A SOCIAL SECURITY OR VOTERS REGISTRATION CARD.
WE APPRECIATE THE DIOCESE'S BUSINESS WITH US.
FOR LATEST INFO-CALL AIRLINES 24HRS BEFORE FLIGHT
NORTHWEST AIRLINES1-800-225-2525
HAVE A PLEASANT TRIP.....RENEE

THANK YOU FOR YOUR BUSINESS

Local Presence, Global Power™

Please Read Reverse For Important Information

CODE: A-Air H-Hotel T-Tour C-Car CLASS: F-P-First C-J Business Class STATUS: OK-Confirmed RO-Request
S-Surface V-Other Travel Service Y,B,H,M,O,K,S,V,L-Coach/Economy WL-Wait List

RECORDS RETURNING AND CONTINUING RESERVATIONS 72 HOURS IN ADVANCE FOR INTERNATIONAL FLIGHTS AND SUGGEST 48 HOURS IN ADVANCE FOR DOMESTIC FLIGHTS. CAUTION: TICKETS HAVE VALUE, IF UNUSED, PLEASE RETURN FOR CREDIT OR REFUND.

TICKET

JK000347

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Vicar General

FD-36 (Rev. 5-22-64)

July 18, 1997

CM

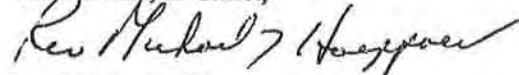
Fr. Jack Krough
Church of St. Edward
2000 Oakland Ave. W.
Austin, Mn 55912-1599

Dear Fr. Krough:

Consequent to our conversations this afternoon, I want to put in writing that as of this date, July 18, 1997, you are on administrative leave from your duties as a priest of the Diocese of Winona and you will be leaving this Sunday, July 20, 1997 for an evaluation at St. Luke's Institute in Maryland. I will receive the report of St. Luke's and at that time consideration will be made as to what path we need to take regarding the future.

I will be thinking of you as you cooperate with the staff of St. Luke's these days. Be assured of my prayers. We do not lose hope for we know that God makes all things work for the good if we let him.

Your Brother, In Christ,



Rev. Michael J. Hoepfner
Vicar General

JK000348

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Vicar General

PO Box 588
Tel. 507/454-4643

July 25, 1997

GM

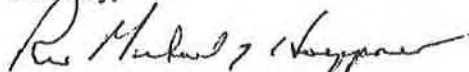
Fr. Jack Krough
Church of St. Edward
2000 Oakland Ave. W.
Austin, Mn. 55912-1599

Dear Fr. Krough:

This letter is to confirm in writing our discussion of this afternoon. St. Luke's will be able to accept you for in-patient work beginning Wednesday, August 6, 1997. Between now and then, you are off administrative leave and are free to minister. Wednesday, August 6, 1997 you will return to administrative leave for your time at St. Luke's. Bishop Vlazny asks that we stay in contact with each other during these days until you leave, so let's plan to chat every two or three days.

God be with you. If there is anything I can help you with, just let me know.

Sincerely,


Rev Michael J. Hoepfner
Vicar General

JK000070



JK

Nelson Travel

Winona, MN 55987
(507) 452-1990

Fax (507) 452-2877

172 ITINERARY INVOICE
PAGE NO. 1
PNR: 1P-GQUR05

DIOCESE OF WINONA
ATTENTION JANICE
P.O. BOX 508
WINONA MN 55987

KROUGH/JACK.FR

AGENT	CONTACT	CUSTOMER NO.	ACCOUNT NO.	DATE		
RENEE			DIOCES	31JUL97		
DAY	DATE	CITY - AIRPORT	TIME	CARRIER	FLIGHT - CLASS STATUS	SERVICE - AMOUNT

A WE 06AUG LV ROCHESTER MINN 100P NORTHWEST 3601F OK
 AR MINNEAPOLS/STPAUL 135P OSTOP JET
 NWA AIRLINK REGIONAL JET OP BY MESABA AVIATION
 SEAT 02-C **BOARDING PASS ISSUED**
 KROUGH/JACK.FR

A WE 06AUG LV MINNEAPOLS/STPAUL 230P NORTHWEST 186F OK
 AR WASH/NATIONAL 547P OSTOP JET
 SEAT 01-C **BOARDING PASS ISSUED**
 KROUGH/JACK.FR

TICKET NUMBER(S): 0121534763861

AIR FARE	464.55
TAX	52.45
TOTAL AIR FARE	517.00
AMOUNT DUE	517.00

PASSENGERS OVER AGE 17 MUST HAVE APPROVED PHOTO ID SUCH AS A VALID DRIVERS LICENSE. THOSE WITHOUT LICENSE MUST PRESENT TWO FORMS OF ID ONE OF WHICH MUST BE GOVERNMENT ISSUED SUCH AS A SOCIAL SECURITY OR VOTERS REGISTRATION CARD.
 WE APPRECIATE THE DIOCESE'S BUSINESS WITH US.
 FOR LATEST INFO-CALL AIRLINES 24HRS BEFORE FLIGHT
 NORTHWEST AIRLINES1-800-225-2525
 HAVE A PLEASANT TRIP.....RENEE

THANK YOU FOR YOUR BUSINESS

Local Presence, Global Power™

Please Read Reverse For Important Information

CODE: A-Air H-Hotel T-Tour C-Car CLASS: F-P-First C-J Business Class STATUS: OK-Confirmed RQ-Request
 S-Surface V-Other Travel Service Y,B,H,M,O,K,S,V,L-Coach/Economy WL-Wait List

RECONFIRM RETURNING AND CONTINUING RESERVATIONS 72 HOURS IN ADVANCE FOR INTERNATIONAL FLIGHTS AND SUGGEST 48 HOURS IN ADVANCE FOR DOMESTIC FLIGHTS. CAUTION: TICKETS HAVE VALUE, IF UNUSED, PLEASE RETURN FOR CREDIT OR REFUND.

TICKET

JK000349

J. Krough

I N J K T E R
O F F I C E

Memo

To: Bishop Vlazny
From: John Broadwater
Subject: Fr. Jack Krough
Date: August 4, 1997

Fr. Krough's current salary situation is as follows:

Base	\$10,500
<u>Longevity (21 yeras)</u>	<u>1,500</u>
Total	\$12,000
<u>Car Allowance</u>	<u>\$ 3,780</u>
Total with car allow.	\$15,780

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Vicar General

JK000351
8/5/97

MEMO

To: Mr. John Broadwater
Fr: Fr. Hoepfner
Re: Rev. Jack Krough
Date: August 5, 1997

John:

Fr. Jack Krough will be at St. Luke Institute beginning this week. Please note the following financial arrangements that have been made with him regarding his time there:

1. The Diocese of Winona will pay him his salary and longevity payment which comes to a total of \$1000.00 per month beginning August, 1997 and continuing for as long as he is at St. Luke Institute.
2. There is no payment of car allowance while he is at St. Luke Institute.
3. The Diocese of Winona extends to Fr. Krough an interest free loan in the amount of \$700.00 per month while he is at St. Luke's Institute.

Payment of the total \$1700.00 per month will be made at the end of each month to Fr. Krough at St. Luke Institute; 8901 New Hampshire Ave.; Silver Springs, Maryland; 20903.

cc. Bishop Vlazny ✓

JK000351

RECEIVED AUG 06 1997

JK



5-Aug-97

Most Reverend John G Vlazny
Diocese of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

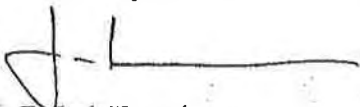
Dear Bishop Vlazny:

Thank you so much for your ministry in these difficult days. I left your office last Friday with a genuine sense that Christ had ministered to me through your care and compassion. Of course, I am sad that my past failings now become an additional burden for you, Fr Hoepfner, and the diocese. I can only assure you of my commitment to doing the work that I now need to do and my continued enthusiasm for the pastoral ministry that I have at St Edward's and Our Lady of Loretto.

Enclosed is a statement of the indebtedness that I discussed with you. As I told you, I had already "cut-up" my cards and had begun the process of climbing out of this hole. While I always felt able to manage parish finances, for some years my personal prescription for handling my depression involved spending. Its another matter to examine at St Luke's. Be assured that I would repay any assistance with expedience.

I know that these will be challenging days. Rick Thomson has reminded me of this each time we have talked. But I also believe in the old adage, "When the student is ready, the teacher will come." I believe that I am ready for the teacher to come. Please know that I pray for you and your ministry often. I will be looking forward to your visit.

Fraternally in Christ,



Fr Jack Krough

J-L-KROUGH

JK000078

JK

Memorandum

To: Bishop John G Vlazny

From: Fr Jack Krough

Date: 08/05/97

Re: Personal Indebtedness

The following is the list of my personal indebtedness, excluding my car payment.

JK

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Office of the Bishop

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

August 5, 1997

Reverend Paul E. Nelson
Saint Augustine Church
405 Fourth Street, NW
Austin, Minnesota 55912

Dear Paul,

As you know, Father Jack Krough will be taking a leave for several months from his responsibilities as pastor of Saint Edward Church in Austin and Our Lady of Loretto Church in Brownsdale. I appreciate the assistance you have already given him as he prepares his people for this still somewhat uncertain future. It was good to talk with you yesterday about these matters.

Given the needs of the people and your familiarity with the pastoral situation at both communities, I am appointing you the parochial administrator of both parishes, St. Edward's in Austin and Our Lady of Loretto in Brownsdale, effective August 6, 1997. I know you can oversee quite capably the many aspects of parish life and you do have good people who have been partners with Father Krough in ministry. The sacramental needs of the two churches, of course, are another matter. I ask you to be in dialogue with Father Michael Hoepfner, our Vicar General, and Father Thomas Jennings, the Dean, in working out the weekend Mass schedules and the other opportunities for sacramental celebrations in the two parishes. We shall try to assist you in finding substitutes, but it would also be helpful if you could celebrate the Sunday Eucharist yourself from time to time with the parishes and arrange for a substitute to come to St. Augustine's on that particular weekend. It gives the people an opportunity to pray with the one who is indeed responsible for their pastoral care.

God bless you, Paul, for your generosity and dedication. It is unparalleled in my priestly experience and I am grateful to God and to you. Don't hesitate to call me with any questions or concerns. It is my understanding that Father Krough will be away for several months and so we need to prepare for a rather lengthy tenure of service on your part. God bless.

Your brother in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazon

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazon
Bishop of Winona

JGV/jm

cc: Reverend Michael J. Hoepfner
Mr. John M. Vitek
Reverend Thomas J. Jennings
Reverend Jack L. Krough

JK000352

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Vicar General

COPIES
Tel. 507.254.6600

August 5, 1997

Copy

Rev. Jack Krough
St. Luke Institute
8901 New Hampshire Ave.
Silver Spring, Maryland 20903

Dear Fr. Krough:

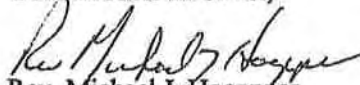
Beginning this month, August, 1997, the Diocese of Winona will pay you your monthly salary and longevity payment. This arrangement will continue as long as you are in care at St. Luke Institute. As I mentioned to you on the phone, the salary and longevity total amount we have registered for you here comes to \$1000.00 per month. According to diocesan policy, you will not receive a car allowance while at St. Luke Institute.

As to the other financial responsibilities you mentioned to the Bishop, the Diocese of Winona will extend to you an interest free loan of \$700.00 per month while you are in care at St. Luke Institute. Hopefully, the total of \$1000.00 salary and longevity plus \$700.00 loan per month will suffice for your financial needs.

We can revisit this arrangement if you truly find that it does not sufficiently meet your needs.

God be with you these days and may he bless and make fruitful your efforts and those with whom you work.

Your Brother In Christ,


Rev. Michael J. Hoepfner
Vicar General

JK000353

JK

14 August 1997

*Received
Aug 25, 1997*

St Luke Institute
8901 New Hampshire Ave
Silver Spring, MD 20903

Rev Michael Hoepfner
Diocese of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Mike:


I am starting my second week at SLI with a sense of gratitude. I am grateful for this place, grateful for the staff and residents here, and grateful for your caring ministry during those dark days when I was preparing to come. I won't forget your kindness.

To my surprise I am genuinely happy to be here. It is an amazing place that really invites compassionate challenge and real healing in the most supportive environment that I have ever known. The feedback that I have gotten informally from my fellow residents and from my therapist confirm my feelings that my work here has started well. Already I have had a couple of very hard days as well as very good ones. While I can wish that my actions had not necessitated the intervention, I do feel blessed to have the chance to learn so much about myself and experience some real growth and healing in my life.

Some of the residents seem to feel that much contact with their diocese will impede their process, but I don't share that sentiment. Please know that you would be welcome to visit if you were in the area and I will always welcome your calls or other communication. I know that you have my personal phone number here.

Thanks again for your help. I regret the pain and embarrassment that this intervention must cause you, but I am thankful for the care and concern that I have received from you. You continue to be in my prayers.

Fraternally in Christ,


Rev Jack L. Krough

JK000081

JK

RECEIVED AUG 25 1997

J. K. [unclear]

14 August 1997

St Luke Institute
8901 New Hampshire Ave
Silver Spring, MD 20903

Most Reverend John G Vlazny
Bishop of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Bishop Vlazny:

It is hard for me to believe that I have been here over a week and that so much has happened in that time. My therapist, fellow residents and I seem to feel that it has been a good start. I'm excited about how quickly the real work began. I have already had some very good days and some very hard days, but I can feel the beginning of a direction toward the future.

My life here at SLI is beginning to feel comfortable. The days have their routine. In the morning there is either yoga or meditation. I like yoga and I fight sleep in meditation. The rest of the day is filled with classes, small group therapy, individual therapy, and then exercise, e.g. "Dancing with Dana" (aerobics) three times a week. After dinner it is off to a 12 step meeting for the evening. I like the meetings that I attend. I had better since all are required to do a 90/90, ninety meetings in the first ninety days. But since one cannot leave the grounds of SLI for the first 30 days, except for the 12 step meeting, they are my chance to get out in the real world. We usually leave early enough so that we can wander around, get coffee, ice cream, greasy food, etc before the meeting. I am surprised how excited I can become when I get a treat like caffeinated coffee. Last night my pc (prudent companion) and I slipped over to Burger King for a cheeseburger; I thought I was in heaven. Tuesday night I do get to go to the mall. A devotee of Mall of America, this is a far cry from that. But it does have two virtues: 1) a food court full of the grease, chocolate, and caffeine I crave and 2) it's a change of scene. As you can probably tell, I am coming to value little things that I once took for granted. After we get back at night there is usually some unstructured talk with someone. It seems to be a very important part of the therapeutic process.

By Thursday of last week I already knew that this was the place I needed to be right now. As hard as it was to come, I am learning much that I know will benefit me and others. The work is hard and goes on through almost all our waking hours, but I feel blessed to have the opportunity to do the work and to be supported by people who will help it to be fruitful. The truth is: were you to call tomorrow and tell me that I can come home, I

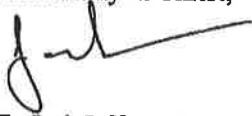
JK000082

JK

would probably campaign to stay. I feel that strongly about the work I am being encouraged to do here.

Thank you for your ministry to me and support of me. While it is hard for me to face the pain my actions have caused you and the diocese, there is little more that I can do but use this opportunity as well as I can. You are daily in my prayers. And of course you are always welcome to call or visit. My phone number is 301-422-5542. Thanks again for the gift of your care.

Fraternally in Christ,

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Jack L Krough', with a long horizontal flourish extending to the right.

Fr Jack L Krough

JK000083

ST. EDWARD CHURCH, Austin

OUR LADY OF LORETTO CHURCH, Brownsdale

St. Edward Schedule

Saturday Confessions 4:30 PM
 Mass 5:15 PM
 Sunday Mass 10:15 AM

Our Lady of Loretto Schedule

Sunday Confessions 8:00 AM
 Mass 8:30 AM

Priests covering St. Edward & Our Lady of Loretto through 12-31-97

Paul Nelson, Administrator (507) 437-4537
 Don Zenk (507) 437-3579
 Harry Jewison (507) 285-5515
 Leroy Eikens (507) 280-7692
 Frank Galles (507) 765-2756
 Tom Cook (507) 483-2317
 Ed Mountain (507) 451-6752

8-15-97

This is the plan. All O.K.

Sat. August 16	Don Zenk	Sat. November 1	Don Zenk
Sun. August 17	Harry Jewison	Sun. November 2	Frank Galles
Sat. August 23	Don Zenk	Sat. November 8	Frank Galles
Sun. August 24	Ed Mountain	Sun. November 9	Frank Galles
Sat. August 30	Don Zenk	Sat. November 15	Don Zenk
Sun. August 31	Ed Mountain	Sun. November 16	Harry Jewison
Sat. September 6	Don Zenk	Sat. November 22	Don Zenk
Sun. September 7	Harry Jewison	Sun. November 23	Harry Jewison
Sat. September 13	Don Zenk	Sat. November 29	Don Zenk
Sun. September 14	Frank Galles	Sun. November 30	Harry Jewison
Sat. September 20	Tom Cook	Sat. December 6	Don Zenk
Sun. September 21	Harry Jewison	Sun. December 7	Harry Jewison
Sat. September 27	Don Zenk	Sat. December 13	Don Zenk
Sun. September 28	Harry Jewison	Sun. December 14	Harry Jewison
Sat. October 4	Don Zenk	Sat. December 20	Don Zenk
Sun. October 5	Harry Jewison	Sun. December 21	Harry Jewison
Sat. October 11	Don Zenk	Wed. December 24	Harry Jewison
Sun. October 12	Leroy Eikens	Thu. December 25	Harry Jewison
Sat. October 18	Don Zenk	Sat. December 27	Don Zenk
Sun. October 19	Harry Jewison	Sun. December 28	Harry Jewison
Sat. October 25	Don Zenk		
Sun. October 26	Leroy Eikens		

1. Sacraments**A. Eucharistic liturgies**

- ▶ M - F daily Mass
- ▶ Sunday Mass
- ▶ Funeral Mass

B. Anointings

- ▶ 2 x / year for health care center Sisters on 2 Francis
- ▶ Individual anointing (3 thus far)
- ▶ communal anointing in Lourdes Chapel

C. Reconciliation

- ▶ 1st & 3rd Wednesday in Lourdes Chapel
- ▶ 2nd & 4th Wednesday on 2 Francis
- ▶ Communal Reconciliation 2 x / year in Lourdes Chapel

D. Preparation for homilies

- ▶ 4 - 6 hours for Sunday liturgy
- ▶ 15 - 30 minutes for daily liturgy

2. Member of Worship Committee (monthly meetings, except June & July)

- ▶ Liturgy planner for liturgical seasons of the year
- ▶ Presenter for Fireside Chats on topics chosen by the Worship Committee
- ▶ Educator for liturgical ministers (lectors, intercessors, etc.)

3. Pastoral Care

- ▶ Participates in monthly in-services for the professional development of pastoral care
- ▶ One-to-one visiting with Sisters
 - A. office appointments (@ 3 hrs / week)
 - B. 1 - 1½ hours in afternoon on 2 Francis to finish "confession / visiting" rounds
 - C. Coffee Cup / Dining Room (2 - 3 hours / week)

4. Assisi Community Center

- ▶ Member of Contemplation Focus Group
- ▶ Presenter for 5 week offering on Sadhana (Nov./Dec.)
 - A. Offered 2 x / week for 1½ hours each session
- ▶ Facilitator for supportive meditation group
 - A. 2 x / week and 1 hour each meeting

5. Miscellaneous

- ▶ Quo Vadis Days (Penance Service)
- ▶ Baptisms:

JK

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanburn

DE

PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Office of the Chancellor

Tel: 507/454-4843
Fax: 507/454-8106

August 15, 1997

To: The Most Reverend John G. Vlazny, Bishop of Winona
✓ Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Vicar General

Fr: John M. Vitek, Chancellor *JV*

Re: Summary Report and Findings
. Krough (Diocese of Winona)

The internal investigation of allegations brought forward by
concerning Rev. Jack L. Krough has been completed. Attached, please
find the Investigation Report and Findings of Alleged Sexual Misconduct.

to my knowledge, is in communication with a victim-advocate,
I arranged this relationship at request
and in accord with our Sexual Misconduct Policy. made an initial
request related to the resolve he was seeking in this matter (see Page 8 of the
Report). I have not received any further requests from

If there is additional information you need from me please let me know.

JK000084

Pastoral Center
53 West Main Street

DIocese of Winona
PO BOX 585
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55991-0585

Phone: 507-539-0000

1997-08-15
10:00:00 AM

August 15, 1997

To: ✓ The Most Reverend John G. Vlazny, Bishop of Winona
Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Vicar General

Fr: John M. Vitek, Chancellor *JV*

Re: Summary Report and Findings
v. Krough (Diocese of Winona)

The internal investigation of allegations brought forward by
concerning Rev. Jack L. Krough has been completed. Attached, please
find the Investigation Report and Findings of Alleged Sexual Misconduct.

to my knowledge, is in communication with a victim-advocate,
I arranged this relationship at request
and in accord with our Sexual Misconduct Policy. made an initial
request related to the resolve he was seeking in this matter (see Page 8 of the
Report). I have not received any further requests from

If there is additional information you need from me please let me know.

JK000419

JK

Pastoral Center ---
45 West Sauborn

DIO
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55907-0588
Office of the Bishop

Tel: 507/261-1014
Fax: 507/261-8100

August 15, 1997

Dear

Our Chancellor, Mr. John Vitek, has completed an internal investigation into the serious matters which you brought forward concerning Rev. Jack L. Krough. First, I wish to let you know of my deep sorrow for your situation. To bring this matter to our attention was an important act of courage, and your desire to see to it that an appropriate resolve was brought to this matter is commended.

As a result of the findings in this investigation, immediate action has been taken with regard to Fr. Krough, in accord with the Sexual Misconduct Policy of the Diocese of Winona. I share your desire to see to it that those who have offended others will receive the appropriate diagnosis and treatment and that they not be placed in a situation where they may offend another ever again.

It is my understanding that you have had the opportunity to talk with an advocate, Hopefully, that has been and will continue to be of value to you. If you would so desire, I am more than willing to meet with you in person to discuss any lingering hurt caused you by this most unfortunate incident. Perhaps, in our conversation, we could find the way to help bring to this travesty a hope and disposition that will lead us to healing and growth. I will continue to keep you in my prayers.

Sincerely yours in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazny

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazny
Bishop of Winona

cc: Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Vicar General

JK000085

JK

Pastoral Center --
55 West Sarber

DIOCESE OF WINONA
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588
Office of the Bishop

Tel: 507-451-1600
Fax: 507-451-1900

August 26, 1997

Reverend Jack L. Krough
Saint Luke's Institute
8901 New Hampshire Avenue
Silver Spring, Maryland 20903

Dear Jack,

The month of August has been interesting, to say the least. This weekend I went to Lanesboro for the 125th anniversary of the parish church there. It was my first visit with Tom Loomis in one of his parishes. He seems to be adjusting nicely, but the folks in Lanesboro are easy. As you know, for all kinds of reasons, historical and otherwise, that is not always the case.

Yesterday I called He seems to be doing fine in his stewardship of St. Edward's and Our Lady of Loretto. He told me that things are working out nicely and people are cooperating with him. But I know that you set the right tone to make all of this possible and I am grateful. Consequently, there is not all the mistrust or misplaced apprehension that typically occurs in these kinds of situations.

The week you left for St. Luke's, I headed out west to San Diego for the annual assembly of the Conference of Major Superiors of Men. It was a good three-day gathering and I managed to visit Bishop Brom and another friend in the area. The weather was fine, even a bit warm for San Diego. But when I came home the real adventure of summer began.

During my routine physical examination, the doctor detected an irregular heartbeat. That did not seem so surprising, given some of the circumstances of my life. But the EKG confirmed his findings and he thought it would be good for me to take a stress test. That did not work out well at all and, two hours after pounding the treadmill, I found myself in St. Marys Hospital, Rochester. The next day the doctors performed an angiogram and moved right in to correct the eighty percent blockage they found in the left descending artery over my heart. Angioplasty and the placement of a stent will hopefully keep the flow moving nicely. They also have me on some medications which are supposed to help, but I must confess they seem more of a deterrent to good health than an assist. But time will tell. The doctors already cut the dosage of one medication in half.

The fact of the matter is I did not feel any discomfort at all before the hospital procedure. I was somewhat uncomfortable in the hospital after the procedure, but nothing to speak of. I came home on August 15 and returned to most of my chores the following Monday. I had planned to

JK000086

JK

Reverend Jack L. Krough
August 26, 1997
Page Two

come to Baltimore later this week for the National Black Catholic Congress, but I am taking a rain check on that one and hope to have a little time for myself. Right now that break on my calendar looks most inviting.

On September 8-9 I shall be in Washington for some meetings at the Bishops' Headquarters and I had hoped to visit you then. But I am afraid it won't work out in September. I will be back in November and we can certainly get together then. It would be nice if I could extend my stay this time around, but it doesn't seem likely. But if I have a chance to get over to St. Luke's, I shall try to come. Monday afternoon, September 8, is the best possibility.

Please know that you continue to have my affection, support and prayers during these months of care. I trust that you are becoming acclimated to St. Luke's and I know that you will be a real asset to their program. If there are any special needs or concerns, please do not hesitate to call. God bless.

Your brother in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazny

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazny
Bishop of Winona

JGV/jm

JK000087

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Vicar General

SEP 14 1997
DIOCESE OF WINONA

September 9, 1997

Rev. Jack Krough
St. Luke Institute
8901 New Hampshire Ave
Silver Spring, MD 20903

CKM

Dear Jack:

Thank you for your letter of August 14. I was glad to hear that your work there had a good start and that you found the people caring, accommodating and helpful. I do hope that things are progressing nicely for you these days. _____ leaves tomorrow to attend St. Luke's and is ready to make good use of the time he will be spending there.

Here, I find myself as busy as ever. Oh, we love meetings. This Thursday I travel all the way to Adrian for a deans meeting. The bishop wants to travel over and back all in one day. That's eight hours of driving for a four hour meeting. Ugh. It will be good to see Jerry Kosse. Since his moving West we don't get to see one another as much as we used to. Monday next is the Fall Presbyteral Council meeting in Albert Lea. I have been off that council for a year now but "I'm back!" The Diocesan Pastoral Council also meets this month, Saturday, September 27, also in Albert Lea. Wouldn't you know it would be a Saturday that I don't have one of my 14 weddings scheduled for. Well, all in all it's not so bad. It all comes with the territory I guess. We do love this wonderful church family that Our Good Lord has blessed us with and do want to take good care of it. I will have a few days of vacation in the mountains before this month is out and that will be nice.

You are certainly welcome for any help I may have given you over the past months. Your own honesty and courage certainly did make things easier than they might have been. If there is more I can do, just let me know. Be assured of my continued prayer and concern.

Your brother in Christ,



Rev. Michael Hoepfner

JK000088

FILE COPY

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Pastoral Center ---
55 West Sanborn

Office of the Bishop

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

September 16, 1997

Dear

Our Chancellor, Mr. John M. Vitek, has shared with me the information he discovered while looking into matters concerning Fr. Jack Krough. In particular, he has shared with me your own testimony to the improper conduct of Fr. Krough and I understand that Fr. Krough has admitted to such involvement. First, as the pastor of the diocesan church, please allow me to express my deepest regret and sorrow to you. It causes me deep sadness to know that the unjustifiable actions of one of our priests has caused you personal pain and to lose trust in the Church.

Mr. Vitek has informed me that you have expressed an interest in seeking a professional counselor with whom you can discuss your lingering thoughts and feelings related to this past incident. I encourage you to do so. Out of the church's pastoral care for you, the Diocese of Winona will assume the financial costs of your visits with a professional counselor. If you wish to pursue this, I will ask Mr. Vitek to continue to work with you to make the necessary arrangements.

The actions of Fr. Krough were absolutely contrary to the work of the church. I will continue to pray for you and I hope that you will be able to come to the resolve and peace you desire in your own mind and heart. If you so desire, I would be more than willing to meet with you in person to talk about this incident. I can be reached by telephone at 507-454-4643.

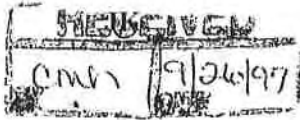
Sincerely yours in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazon

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazon
Bishop of Winona

bcc: Rev. Michael Hoepfner
Mr. John M. Vitek
Mr. George Restovich
Mr. Mike Saffel

JK000377



Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Office of the Chancellor

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

September 19, 1997

Dear

I received your letter dated September 16, 1997, in which you indicate that you would like to pursue "appropriate professional counseling." You have requested that the Diocese of Winona "bear the cost of [your] rehabilitation." I have presented your request to Bishop Vlazny and he is certainly willing to assist you with the professional counseling which you desire as an extension of the church's pastoral care for you.

The Diocese of Winona will make payment for your counseling expenses for six months from the date you begin counseling. The diocese can set up a direct billing with the counseling office you choose so that you will incur no out-of-pocket expenses. You may have them contact me to make the necessary payment arrangements. At the end of this six month period, we can discuss further needs that you might have.

Please, continue to discuss concerns or questions you might have with is you
so desire. I assure you of the Bishop's continued prayers for your well-being. Perhaps, the counseling will help bring healing to your mind and heart.

Sincerely,

John M. Vitek
Chancellor

cc: Most Reverend John G. Vlazny
Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Vicar General

bcc: Mr. John Broadwater
✓ Mr. George Restovich
Mr. Mike Saffel

JK000089

JK

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

DIC
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Office of the Bishop

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-0106

September 22, 1997

Reverend Jack L. Krough
Saint Luke's Institute
8901 New Hampshire Avenue
Silver Spring, Maryland 20903

Dear Jack,

Two weeks have passed since I had the chance to visit you. It looks like I will be back in Washington next Monday, but just for a few hours. I have been asked to come to a committee meeting at NCCB Headquarters. I will arrive around 11:00am and I will return on the 5:15pm flight. Both Sunday and Tuesday are busy days back home and so that's the way I have to do it. I wish I could see you and but it simply won't work out this time.

My visit with you was certainly upbeat. I am grateful that you have accepted the assistance being provided you at Saint Luke's and I am very confident that your good efforts will be a blessing for yourself and many others as well. I haven't heard any more reports about you since Paul Nelson called to tell me that you were at Saint Marys Hospital in Rochester. It seems that you are staying put now! Good for you.

We had a Presbyteral Council meeting a week ago. The latest bit of wisdom around the tables is that here in the Diocese of Winona we don't have any problems with "processes," but we do have problems with "persons." I got the sense that I was one of those "persons"! I will let you guess the author of that analysis. Much conversation centered around our return to Okoboji next month. Most people at the gathering could not remember what we had decided to do as a result of last year's experience at Okoboji. Believe it or not, I was the one who had to refresh some memories, as much as I was reluctant to do so. I hope we do better this time. But maybe we will arrive and decide simply to enjoy ourselves. That might be good for a change. Please do keep all of us in your prayers October 6,7 and 8.

Rick Thomson is coming to Rochester on October 1. I plan to meet him for dinner. It will be good to hear about his new situation in the Archdiocese of Detroit. There also will be some visitors to my home in Winona in the coming weeks. I look forward to entertaining friends there. From mid-November until early June, no one seems to come. I wonder why!

This past weekend I was on a western safari. We had the Diocesan Council of Catholic Women bi-annual convention in Mankato Friday evening and Saturday. Saturday evening I went to Worthington for another Operation Andrew dinner. We had one in Mankato the previous

JK000090

JK

Reverend Jack L. Krough
September 22, 1997
Page Two

Sunday. They went well. Sunday morning I celebrated Mass at [redacted], s new parish in Slayton. It was part of their 100th anniversary observance. [redacted] had scheduled the official celebration on the very same day as folks in East Chain were celebrating their centennial. They had contacted me first and so I was unable to visit Slayton when they requested. But Jim was kind enough to give me a second chance. Then the weekend ended with my first fall Confirmation at Saint Theodore's Church in Albert Lea. The next two weekends will be busy ones. Then I get a break when my family comes to visit me in Winona over Columbus Day weekend and I shall simply stay home and celebrate the 11:00am Mass at the Cathedral. Something to look forward to!

The day after I saw you I had lunch with Tim Reker and then he drove me to the airport. He is still a "happy camper" working for the bishops. Can you believe it? I think he is relieved to be free of the responsibilities of Immaculate Heart of Mary Seminary. The job of rector is a demanding one and I can see it as taxing for Bill Becker as well. The struggle to keep a decent enrollment there and the proximity to students at a sometimes problematic time in their lives provide many challenges. Bill likes the work but I think it takes its toll. Jim Steffes and Dave Kunz are good helpers. Losing [redacted] was not an easy thing, but God provides.

Please thank your counselor for welcoming me so graciously. I also ask you to give my warmest greetings to [redacted]. When I come to Washington in November, I was wondering about the possibility of having lunch with you and [redacted] on Saturday, November 8. By then his thirty days "on campus" should be complete. Please check into that for me and let me know. I shall be staying at the Hyatt Regency Hotel on Capitol Hill. But I will be in contact with you before then. Naturally, the bishop would pay!

Please know you have my affection as well as a continuous remembrance in my prayers. You are missed but you are not forgotten. Cyprian sends greetings from the pastor's chair!

Your brother in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazny

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazny
Bishop of Winona

JGV/jm

JK000091

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Vicar General

PO Box 588
Tel. 507/454-4643

October 22, 1997


Fr. Jack Krough
St. Luke Institute
8901 New Hampshire Ave
Silver Spring, MD20903

Dear Jack:

Hope all is going well for you. I just returned from the Canon Law Society of America convention in San Diego. Was a good meeting. Ed McGrath also went. Dan Murray was in attendance and we had a good time. The three of us had dinner one evening with Bishop Brom and enjoyed war stories. I told the brothers at our meeting at Lake Okoboji that, as a rule, I would not be publishing information as to where a brother goes on a leave of absence like the one you on unless the brother specifically asks for this and it is in accord with whatever program they are undertaking. You, of course, are free to communicate with whom ever you wish. I told them that if they had mail they would like you to receive, I would see you receive it. When I returned from San Diego, there was the enclosed correspondence waiting for me to forward to you. I am happy to do so.

Be good.

Your Brother, In Christ,


(Rev.) Michael Hoepfner
Vicar General

enc.

JK000355

WINONA DIOCESE SELF INSURANCE PROGRAM



GALLAGHER BASSETT SERVICES, INC. ADMINISTRATOR

Post Office Box 30127
 Winona, Minnesota 55987
 (507) 454-6452
 Fax: (800) 335-8141

November 4, 1997

Pastoral Center
 Box 588
 Winona, Minnesota 55987

ATTENTION: MR. JOHN VITEK

REFERENCE: .
 LOSS DATE: 07/01/79
 OUR FILE: 000119-002452-PI-01

Dear John,

I have been asked to obtain the following information:

1. Do we have all the available background, personal and damages information from the claimant?
2. Has there been any prior knowledge of Father Krough having a previous predisposition for sexually abusive behavior?
3. Would you please forward as much background information on Father Krough as possible.

If you have any questions, do not hesitate to contact me.

Best regards,

Michael Saffel

Mike Saffel

MS:lm

Phase 3

IX
now engaged to
first intimate rel. in his life
unfortunate: struggles w/

when he he has flashback
PTSD mostly gone
Ben doing couples therapy & pre m
counseling, consult w/
program.

Consult \$ 230 Sep.

Dr Feldman &

#

Called reports graduation degree
as Sigmund's analyst.
requests followup meeting
separated & divorced from wife.
Approval for

**INTERSTATE
INSURANCE
GROUP**

CERTIFIED MAIL #Z 363 203 227
RETURN RECEIPT REQUESTED

November 18, 1997

55 East Monroe Street
Chicago, Illinois 60603
312-346-6400
FAX 312-346-5748

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazny
Bishop of Diocese of Winona
55 West Sanborn
P.O. Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987

Re: Insured: Diocese of Winona
Claimant:
Claim No: 01-97L070580

Dear Bishop Vlazny:

This letter references notice to us of a sexual misconduct claim with respect to [redacted] and Fr. Jack Krough, and will serve to inform you of Interstate Fire & Casualty Co.'s (IFC) position with respect to coverage under the policies.

IFC provided excess liability coverage to the Diocese of Winona from July 1, 1978 through July 1, 1979 under policy #183-152609, which was renewed for the subsequent policy periods of July 1, 1979 through July 1, 1980, July 1, 1980 through July 1, 1981 and July 1, 1981 to July 1, 1982. The policy was again renewed for the policy periods of July 1, 1982 to July 1, 1983, July 1, 1983 to July 1, 1984, and July 1, 1984 to July 1, 1985 under policy #183-0169196. These policies provided excess general liability indemnity coverage with limits of \$4.8 million, excess \$200,000 provided by the Diocese's self-insured retention and Lloyds. The policy was renewed one last time for the policy period of July 1, 1985 to July 1, 1986 under policy #83-0172436 and provided excess general liability indemnity coverage with limits of \$800,000, excess \$200,000 provided by the Diocese's self-insured retention and Lloyds.

IFC's policy of insurance is "following form" to the Lloyds policy, and the provisions of the immediate underlying policies are incorporated as part of this policy.

Interstate Fire & Casualty Company
Chicago Insurance Company
Interstate Indemnity Company

Member Companies of The Fireman's Fund Insurance Group

JK000373

claims that he was sexually abused by Father Krough from 1979 to 1981.

IFC's policies are excess in nature and, therefore, are not triggered until the underlying policies are exhausted. Liability shall attach to IFC only after the underlying insurer(s) have paid or have been held liable to pay the full amount of the respective ultimate net loss liability.

Coverage attaches only for those persons who qualify as an insured. Generally, insured is defined to include an official or employee of the named insured while acting within the course and scope of his duties as such.

Based on the information provided, it is IFC's opinion that if the allegations are proven, Father Krough was acting outside the course and scope of his priestly duties and for his own self-gratification when he allegedly sexually assaulted Father Krough, therefore, would not qualify as an insured under IFC's policy, and IFC would not indemnify Father Krough nor allow his defense costs to be incorporated into the underlying limits and/or self-insured retention in order to reduce same, so as to activate IFC's excess liability coverage. Furthermore, there is no coverage whatsoever for Father Krough personally due to intentional torts or acts.

The intentional infliction of physical and/or emotional injury falls outside the scope of coverage under the definition of "occurrence" which generally requires that any such injury or damage for which coverage is claimed be neither expected nor intended.

Further, the policy specifically excludes liability for assault and battery committed by or at the direction of anyone claiming coverage thereunder.

Should it be proven that the Diocese of Winona knew or should have known of Father Krough's proclivities, these activities, knowledge of the diocese of his activities, and failure to take any action to prevent his inappropriate conduct, if proven, could void coverage. See Diocese of Winona vs. Interstate Fire & Casualty Co., 916 F.Supp. 923 (D.Minn. 1995). As noted above, there is no coverage for expected or intended personal injury.

Generally, an occurrence is defined as an accident or happening or event which unexpectedly and unintentionally results in personal injury or property damage during the policy period. Since the language of the Lloyd's policy, incorporated into IFC's "following form" excess policy, requires the "accident" and the "injury" to occur within the policy period, IFC would have absolutely no coverage for any claim for conduct which occurred prior to July 1, 1978 or after July 1, 1986, since the time frame for such claims would be outside the coverage issued by IFC to the Diocese of Winona. We respectfully decline coverage for any alleged misconduct occurring before July 1, 1978 or after July 1, 1986. Also, please note that the Sexual or Physical Abuse Exclusion Endorsement on Policy Number #83-0172436 would bar coverage for claims arising out of sexual or physical abuse or molestation by an insured for the time period of July 1, 1985 to July 1, 1986.

It does appear that the alleged abuse took place over a period of several years. IFC would like to make it clear that it does not adopt or agree with the "first encounter" theory which has been advanced by other insurers in molestation cases. It is IFC's position that any portion of injuries sustained during any policy period will trigger that policy period's SIR and underlying insurance. Further, it may well be that injury or molestation sustained at more than one location would result in multiple occurrences during any one policy period.

In support of IFC's position, we wish to advise you that the United States Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit has adopted IFC's position in Society of Roman Catholic Church vs. Interstate Fire & Casualty Co., 26F.3d 1359 (5th Cir. 1994). Under that decision, for each year in which the alleged abuse occurred, the Archdiocese's entire SIR and the underlying layer of coverage would have to be exhausted before any of IFC's excess indemnity coverage for that year would be triggered.

The Ninth Circuit reached a similar result in Interstate Fire & Casualty Co. vs. The Archdiocese of Portland, et al. 35 F.3d 1325 (9th Cir. 1994).

The Seventh Circuit Court of Appeals, in Alan Godfrey Lee, et al v. Interstate Fire & Casualty Company, 86 F.3d 101 (7th Cir. 1996) affirmed IFC's position.

See also Diocese of winona v. Interstate Fire & Casualty Co., 89 F.3d 1386 (8th Cir. 1996).

IFC further reserves its rights to reimbursement should we expend indemnity dollars and subsequently establish non-coverage.

Please do not interpret this letter as a denial of coverage. Rather, it is simply to advise you that IFC will act upon this loss under a full and complete reservation of rights under the terms of the referenced policies issued to the Diocese of Winona. This reservation of rights is without prejudice to IFC's right to assert any other policy defenses which may be applicable as ascertained during further investigation of the referenced matter. IFC does not waive any of the terms or conditions of the applicable policies and does not waive any of the defenses which may now or hereafter exist for this claim.

IFC would also like to remind you of the continuing obligation of the insured to fully and completely cooperate with IFC in connection with this matter as well as of the insured's obligation to keep IFC fully informed and apprised of developments as this matter proceeds. A noncompliance with this obligation may restrict or bar coverage. Therefore, IFC requests to be copied on all pertinent correspondence and pleadings filed or served. Please add my name to your mailing list for such material when it is forwarded from your law office to Gallagher Bassett Services, Inc. Your cooperation in this area is highly appreciated.

Should you have any questions, please do not hesitate to contact me.

Very truly yours,

Patti Blake

cc: Cathy Sugayan
Lord, Bissell & Brook

Tim McNamara
Onebane, Bernard, Torian, Diaz, McNamara & Abell

Tom Glaaser
Gallagher Bassett Services, Inc.

JK000376

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PO BOX 788
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

Office of the Bishop

Tel: 507/464-4643
Fax: 507/464-6128

December 3, 1997

PERSONAL & CONFIDENTIAL

Dear

As you may have already heard, on October 28th I was appointed to serve as the Archbishop of the Diocese of Portland in Oregon. I will be leaving for Portland in mid-December. Before I depart, however, I wish to extend to you one last note of my care for you as the pastor of the Church of Winona.

Since I first learned of your tragic experience, I have placed you in my prayers. I have prayed for your healing and eventual restored trust in a loving God, and, if possible, a restored trust in the Church. As I prepare to depart Winona, I assure you that you will continue to be placed in my prayers even as I pastor the church of Portland. I will not forget you.

Please be assured that the commitment I made to you on September 16, 1997, will continue to be upheld by the Diocese of Winona. A diocesan administrator will be elected in late December to administrate the diocese during the time in which the diocese awaits its new bishop. Mr. John Vitek will continue to serve as Chancellor of the diocese. Please continue to be in conversation with Mr. Vitek as you need or desire.

Again, I assure you of my continued prayer that the healing power of Christ may restore you to whole health through the love and support of family, friends, and those trained to help you in your healing. The peace of Christ be with you.

Sincerely Yours in the Lord,

+ John G. Vlazny

The Most Reverend John G. Vlazny
Archbishop-elect of Portland, Oregon

cc: Rev. Michael Hoepfner
✓ Mr. John M. Vitek, Chancellor

JK000370

MEMO

To: Rev. Michael J. Hoepfner
From: John M. Vitek
Subject: Reassignment of Fr. Jack Krough
Date: February 26, 1998

I spoke with Dr. Walter Bera, Ph.D., of Family Therapy Associates at Minneapolis yesterday. As you know, Dr. Bera is the therapist for two of the survivors of Fr. Jack Krough's sexual misconduct. Also, Dr. Bera is nationally renowned for his expertise in the treatment of male survivors of clergy sexual abuse.

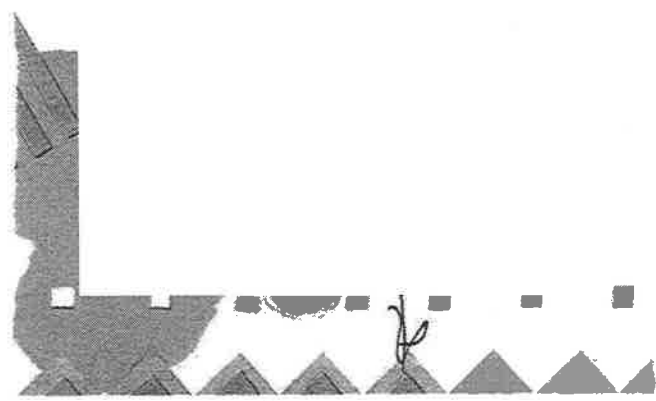
Dr. Bera offered the following recommendation concerning the discernment of reassignment for Fr. Krough. First of all, Dr. Bera is aware of Fr. Krough's treatment plan, including aftercare plan as he has been in contact with the doctors at St. Luke's. Dr. Bera is not privy, however, to any of the details of Fr. Krough's medical file and thus is not aware of the extent of Fr. Krough's "self reporting" to St. Luke's.

Dr. Bera will seek permission from the primary survivor of Fr. Krough to release his "narrative" of the abuse to the Diocese of Winona for the purpose of reviewing the survivor's more complete accounting of the abuse that occurred. Dr. Bera strongly recommends that you compare the survivor's abuse narrative to the self-reporting of Fr. Krough as another source of evidence toward the credibility of the treatment and aftercare plan. Dr. Bera would pose the following questions for your consideration; "to what extent has Fr. Krough self-reported the nature and depth of his offenses? Are you reasonably sure that Fr. Krough has dealt with all of the issues that he needs to have dealt with in order to be healthy in ministry, without risk of re-offending?"

If the primary survivor should agree to release his narrative to the diocese, I will forward that confidential document to you as soon as it arrives, but it shouldn't be expected any sooner than March 6, 1998.

Dr. Bera has made one additional request. If the decision is made to re-assign Fr. Krough, even with limited responsibilities, he asks that the diocese collaborate with him in the treatment of the two survivors with whom he is working. In particular, he would like to be informed of this decision prior to his patients so that he can arrange the proper therapeutic setting to assist them in working through their feelings related to such a decision. He would also be willing to discuss with us possible approaches to informing the survivors in order to assist a "best case scenario."

If you should have any questions about this, please feel free to contact me.



3/8/98

sophomore, Spring >

incident: try to set up 1-1 where
~~date~~ uncomfortable

① Photography at Nature park,
wanted to take his portrait
modeling him, Fondled genital, grabbed
not accidental, not brushing groin,

② invited over to rectory, in his
room, tried something, sit with him

2-3795

**INVESTIGATION REPORT
OF ALLEGED SEXUAL MISCONDUCT
Diocese of Winona**

Re: vs. Krough

Complainant Information

Complainant:
Date of Birth:
Reported by:
Date of Report: March 8, 1998
Home Address:

Home Telephone:

Brief Biographical: Mr. was born and He attended .
High School for three years, transferring to the school for his
Senior year. Mr. was a member of the Photograph Club
during his years there. Mr. now resides in He is

Alleged Perpetrator's Information

Person accused of
misconduct: Rev. Jack Lee Krough, Date of Birth: August 11, 1949
Ordained May 21, 1976 at Winona
Current Appointment: Leave of Absence
Current Address: c/o Diocese of Winona
Current Telephone: unknown
Appointment at time St. Augustine, Austin, June 11, 1976-June 22, 1980
of alleged misconduct: Faculty advisor for the Photography Club
Date of Response to
the allegation:
Persons Present:
Location of Meeting:
Time of Meeting:
Nature of Allegation: Sexual Misconduct: Child sexual abuse and Attempted Child sexual abuse

Statement of Alleged Victim

recalls that Fr. Krough was the faculty "advisor" of the High School
Photography club while he was a student at . He remembers Fr. Krough often tried to
arrange one-on-one meetings with him, especially in the dark room. Mr. remembers being
"uncomfortable" during these meetings. He recalls two specific incidences.

First, Fr. Krough and Mr. [redacted] during the [redacted] year at [redacted] went to do some photographing at a nature park in [redacted]. Mr. [redacted] alleges that Fr. Krough wanted to take his portrait and that Fr. Krough would physically touch his body to “pose” or “model” him the way Fr. Krough wanted. During this session, Fr. Krough allegedly “grabbed [redacted] groin” and “fondled [his] genitals.” This contact was on the outside of his clothing. Mr. [redacted] described the touching as “not accidental, not just brushing,” but a deliberate fondling.

On a second occasion, Fr. Krough invited Mr. [redacted] to the rectory. They went to Fr. Krough’s bedroom. There Fr. Krough made sexual innuendos and sat on Mr. [redacted]’s lap. Mr. [redacted] became uncomfortable with the situation and left.

**INVESTIGATION REPORT
OF ALLEGED SEXUAL MISCONDUCT
Diocese of Winona**

Re: vs. Krough

Complainant Information

Complainant:
Date of Birth:
Reported by:
Date of Report: March 8, 1998
Home Address:

Home Telephone:

Brief Biographical: was born and raised in Minnesota. He attended High School for three years, transferring to the school for his Senior year. Mr. was a member of the Photograph Club during his years there.

Alleged Perpetrator's Information

Person accused of misconduct: Rev. Jack Lee Krough, Date of Birth: August 11, 1949
Ordained May 21, 1976 at Winona
Current Appointment: Leave of Absence
Current Address: c/o Diocese of Winona
Current Telephone: unknown
Appointment at time of alleged misconduct: St. Augustine, Austin, June 11, 1976-June 22, 1980
Faculty advisor for the Photography Club
Date of Response to the allegation:
Persons Present:
Location of Meeting:
Time of Meeting:
Nature of Allegation: Sexual Misconduct: Child sexual abuse and Attempted Child sexual abuse

Statement of Alleged Victim

Mr. recalls that Fr. Krough was the faculty "advisor" of the High School Photography club while he was a student at He remembers Fr. Krough often tried to arrange one-on-one meetings with him, especially in the dark room. Mr. remembers being "uncomfortable" during these meetings. He recalls two specific incidences.

First, Fr. Krough and Mr. [redacted] during the [redacted] at [redacted] went to do some photographing at a nature park in [redacted]. Mr. [redacted] alleges that Fr. Krough wanted to take his portrait and that Fr. Krough would physically touch his body to "pose" or "model" him the way Fr. Krough wanted. During this session, Fr. Krough allegedly "grabbed [Mr. [redacted]] groin" and "fondled [his] genitals." This contact was on the outside of his clothing. Mr. [redacted] described the touching as "not accidental, not just brushing," but a deliberate fondling.

expression
"right"
"right"
"right"

On a second occasion, Fr. Krough invited Mr. [redacted] to the rectory. They went to Fr. Krough's bedroom. There Fr. Krough made sexual innuendos and sat on Mr. [redacted]'s lap. Mr. [redacted] became uncomfortable with the situation and left. "right"

I dealt w/ that stuff at St Luke - that was covered w my therapy

L: incident are correct
"yep"

'St Luke's' challenged to get everything out there.

Other women "I've given you what I've got."

Fr Edward Mr D... [redacted]

30 III 1998

per telephone

JK

Walter H. Bera, Ph.D.
Licensed Psychologist
Licensed Marriage and Family Therapist
Family Therapy Associates
1111 West 22nd Street - Suite 210
Minneapolis, MN 55405
612-377-9921

March 18, 1998

CONFIDENTIAL

John M. Vitek
Diocese of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987-0588

RE: Concerns About Fr. Krough and His Continued Dangerousness If Returned to a Diocese Position of Religious Power Even With Limited Assignment

Dear Mr. Vitek,

Thank you for your call allowing me to inform my involved clients about Fr. Krough being considered for possible return to a "limited" assignment to a position of power in a diocese. Although both clients I spoke with were very concerned, had the strongest reservations given the degree of victimization he experienced and his knowledge and training as an such cases. The following are some of his concerns that he wished me to convey to you and acting administrator Fr. Hoepfner:

- Same-sex ephebophiles are those are those who sexually abuse teens of the same gender. Male to male ephebophilia are the highest frequency recidivists among child molesters. Fr. Krough is classically in this category and if he was assessed and treated in the secular community (e.g. teacher) would not be allowed to return to a position of power, usually ever. If returned the community, it would be to limited work without power over vulnerable people and only after much therapy.
- Past Bishop Vlasney would not have considered reassignment to a diocese. Why has that policy changed?
- Given Fr. Krough's history of ephebophilia, public announcements should be made to past parishes and schools where he had been as is done in the public sector when a teacher or scout master is known to have abused. Will that be done with Fr. Krough? Do parishioners and families know "what's going on with Fr. Krough?"
- If considered for a diocese, will a community warning be posted and meetings held such as is done with other similar offenders returning to the community?

JK000102

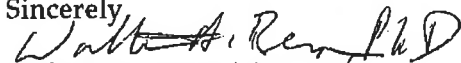
JK

- would like to be informed and receive information as to the information regarding Fr. Krough's therapy, therapists, assessments, etc., especially as they pertain to Given the psychological cunning and manipulativeness that experienced at the hands of Fr. Krough, there is strong suspicion that Mr. Krough was incomplete and minimized his perpetration history to clinicians. This is typical of such sex offenders. Was the therapy primarily based on Fr. Krough's self-report or were attempts made to get collaborative information. No attempts were made to contact this clinician so that Fr. Krough's clinicians could get a more complete story of the abuse events. I continue to look forward to coordinating therapy with the professionals involved in this case.
- is aware of other possible victims of Fr. Krough based on this offender's pattern. He asked if you are aware of them as well, or if Fr. Krough has revealed them to his therapists? Have all the victims Fr. Krough revealed been contacted for an offer of information and therapy? Have you or another from the church contacted them:
 - Pacelli H.S. student who then entered the seminary at Winona for a time.
 - Some members of the family in The mom worked in and they have a large family.
 - who went to and later died from is strongly considered a possible victim.
 - Krough was the photo director at Cotter H.S. at Winona after Pacelli. Have possible victim families been contacted there?
 - Fr. Krough was a Camp Director for the Boy Scouts of America. Have you contacted them to inform them of this perpetrator's behavior? They now keep a data bank of dangerous past BSA associated persons. Are there victims there? What abuse may have occurred in that position?
- was gratified to receive information on this possible reassignment. He would like to continue to be informed of future developments prior to any significant actions be taken.

My other client has located another confirmed victim in named Has the Church reached out to him. Did Fr. Krough admit this abuse prior to this new, confirmed information?

As you can see there are many serious concerns. Please consider them fully before Fr. Krough can once more be given the opportunity to use his position of religious trust and authority to abuse again.

Sincerely


Walter H. Bera, Ph.D.

JK000103

JK

REC'D MAR 20 1998

Walter H. Bera, Ph.D.
Licensed Psychologist
Licensed Marriage and Family Therapist
Family Therapy Associates
1111 West 22nd Street - Suite 210
Minneapolis, MN 55405
612-377-9921

March 18, 1998

John M. Vitek
Diocese of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987-0588

CONFIDENTIAL

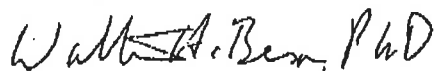
RE: Request for Continued Therapy Support for

Dear Mr. Vitek,

has informed me that his six month authorization for therapy support by the Diocese of Winona for the treatment of past clergy sexual abuse is to expire in April. This letter is a request for continued authorization for another six months.

Please call or write if you need any other information in order to facilitate this request.

Sincerely,



Walter H. Bera, Ph.D.

cc:

JK000104

CONFIDENTIAL

Interoffice
MEMORANDUM

to: Rev. Michael Hoepfner
from: John M. Vitek *JV*
subject: Letter Concerning Fr. Jack Krough
date: March 23, 1998

On March 20, 1998 I received the attached letter from Dr. Walter Bera on behalf
The letter expresses "concerns about Fr. Krough and his continued dangerousness if
returned to a diocese position of religious power even with limited assignment."

Though the letter is addressed to me, it may be most appropriate for you to respond to
specific questions and concerns since I am not aware of the nature of the discussions
that have been taking place with regard to this matter.

END

JK000105

JK

CONFIDENTIAL

Interoffice
MEMORANDUM

to: Rev. Michael Hoepfner
from: John M. Vitek
subject: Continued Payment for Therapy for
date: March 23, 1998

On March 18, 1998 I received a "request for continued therapy support for [redacted] from his treating psychologist, Dr. Walter Bera.

On September 19, 1998, on behalf of The Most Reverend John G. Vlazny, I indicated to [redacted] writing Bishop Vlazny's desire to extend pastoral care in the form of payment for his therapy for a six month period, beginning immediately. That six month period is near complete and [redacted] is now asking for another six months of therapy coverage.

Given the treatment plan described by Dr. Bera, I am recommending that the diocese extend pastoral care in the form of treatment coverage for [redacted] for an additional six months, to be reviewed again at that time.

I will need to know of your decision promptly so that Dr. Bera and [redacted] may be properly notified.

END

JK000106

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55907-0588

Pastoral Center
55 West Sanborn

Office of the Chancellor

TEL: 507/454-4643
FAX: 507/454-8106

cmh 3/23/98
DATE

CONFIDENTIAL

March 23, 1998

Dr. Walter Bera
Family Therapy Associates
1111 West 22nd Street
Suite 210
Minneapolis, MN 55405

Post-It™ brand fax transmittal memo 7671		# of pages ▶
To: George Restovich	From: John Vitek	
Co.	Co. Diocese of Winona	
Dept.	Phone # 507-454-4643	
Fax # 507-288-4908	Fax # 507-454-8106	

Dear Dr. Bera:

This letter serves to acknowledge receipt of the letter which you sent to me dated March 18, 1998. In that letter you expressed concerns on behalf of _____ with regard to "Fr. Krough and his continued dangerousness if returned to a diocese position of religious power even with limited assignment."

Since I am not privy to the specifics of the discussion concerning the possibility of Fr. Krough's reassignment, I have forwarded a copy of your letter to Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Diocesan Administrator for his review, consideration and possible response to

Under separate cover I will send a confirmation notice concerning the continued therapy coverage for

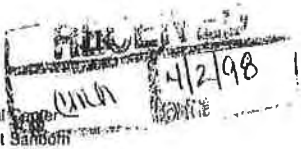
Sincerely,

John M. Vitek
Chancellor

cc: Rev. Michael Hoepfner

END

Pastoral Center
55 West Sanborn



DIOC
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588
Office of Diocesan Administrator

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-6106

March 30, 1998

CONFIDENTIAL

Dear

Our chancellor, Mr. John M. Vitek, has informed me of the formal allegation you have brought forward concerning Rev. Jack L. Krough, a priest of the Diocese of Winona. First of all, please allow me to express my sincere sadness at learning of this incident. On behalf of the people of the Winona diocese, please know of our care and concern for you.

Mr. Vitek has concluded his investigation of this matter. Fr. Krough has indicated that your recollection was correct as you've stated to Mr. Vitek. Fr. Krough has further indicated that he had revealed this incident, but not by name of the victim, during the course of his treatment at St. Luke's.

Nonetheless, based on the evidence, particularly Fr. Krough's admission as to the accuracy of your allegations, Mr. Vitek finds cause to support your claim of criminal sexual conduct on the part of Fr. Jack L. Krough. I accept Mr. Vitek's findings.

please know of the church's deep regret. I thank you for your courage to make this incident known. If there is anything further that you would like to discuss with me, please feel free to contact me at my office. I will continue to place you in my prayers.

Sincerely,

Rev. Michael Hoepfner
Diocesan Administrator

cc: Rev. Edward McGrath
Mr. John M. Vitek

bcc: ✓ Mr. George Restovich
Mr. Mike Saffel
Mr. John Broadwater

JK000108

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

Office of Diocesan Administrator

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

March 30, 1998

CONFIDENTIAL

Dear

Our chancellor, Mr. John M. Vitek, has informed me of the formal allegation you have brought forward concerning Rev. Jack L. Krough, a priest of the Diocese of Winona. First of all, please allow me to express my sincere sadness at learning of this incident. On behalf of the people of the Winona diocese, please know of our care and concern for you.

Mr. Vitek has concluded his investigation of this matter. Fr. Krough has indicated that your recollection was correct as you've stated to Mr. Vitek. Fr. Krough has further indicated that he had revealed this incident, but not by name of the victim, during the course of his treatment at St. Luke's.

Nonetheless, based on the evidence, particularly Fr. Krough's admission as to the accuracy of your allegations, Mr. Vitek finds cause to support your claim of criminal sexual conduct on the part of Fr. Jack L. Krough. I accept Mr. Vitek's findings.

, please know of the church's deep regret. I thank you for your courage to make this incident known. If there is anything further that you would like to discuss with me, please feel free to contact me at my office. I will continue to place you in my prayers.

Sincerely,



Rev. Michael Hoepfner
Diocesan Administrator

cc: Rev. Edward McGrath
Mr. John M. Vitek

bcc: Mr. George Restovich
Mr. Mike Saffel
Mr. John Broadwater

JK000385

FINDING OF ALLEGED SEXUAL MISCONDUCT

Diocese of Winona

Date of Finding: March 30, 1998

Complainant:

Alleged Perpetrator: Rev. Jack L. Krough (DOB 8/11/49)

Date of Response by
alleged perpetrator: March 30, 1998, by conference call with Fr. Edward McGrath and Mr.
John Vitek.

Finding

Mr. . . . alleged that Fr. Krough had deliberately "grabbed his groin" and "fondled his genitals" during a photography session at a nature park in . . . during Mr. . . . 's . . . year in high school. Fr. Krough indicated "right, right, right" to this allegation, confirming that Mr. . . . 's recollection was correct as he has stated.

Mr. . . . alleged also that Fr. Krough had invited him to the rectory on one occasion and there made "sexual innuendos and sat on Mr. . . . 's lap." Fr. Krough responded, "right." Indicating that this incident did occur as described by Mr. . . .

Fr. Krough further indicated that he had revealed this incident, but not by name of the victim, during the course of his treatment at St. Luke's.

1. Based on the evidence, particularly Fr. Krough's admission as to the accuracy of Mr. . . . 's statement, I find cause to support Mr. . . . 's claim of criminal sexual conduct on the part of Fr. Jack L. Krough.

Respectfully submitted to: Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Diocesan Administrator

Respectfully submitted by: Mr. John M. Vitek, Chancellor

Submitted on: March 30, 1998

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA


55 West Sanborn PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987
507-454-4643

Note Receivable

As of this date, March 31, 1998, ~~Fr. Jack Krough~~ acknowledges the receipt of money loaned to him by the Diocese of Winona as listed on the schedule below. Fr. Krough agrees to repay the entire amount of this loan to the Diocese of Winona according to a schedule to be determined at a later date.

Loan Installments:	August 25, 1997	\$ 700.00
	September 25, 1997	\$ 700.00
	October 27, 1997	\$ 700.00
	November 26, 1997	\$ 700.00
	December 29, 1997	\$ 700.00
	January 26, 1998	\$ 700.00
	March 16, 1998	\$ 700.00
	March 31, 1998	\$ 700.00
Total Loan to date:		<u>\$5,600.00</u>

Signed by:


Fr. Jack Krough

Date:

3 Apr 98

(Original to Diocese Finance Office, Copy to Fr. Krough)

JK000356

JK
 Diocese of Winona
 NRKrough.wk4
 Rev Jack Krough

5,600.00
 0.00

Date Paid	Interest Paid Through	Total Payment	Interest Paid	Principal Paid	Note Balance

Note #XXX					
08/25/97		(700.00)			700.00
09/25/97		(700.00)	0.00	(700.00)	1,400.00
10/27/97		(700.00)	0.00	(700.00)	2,100.00
11/25/97		(700.00)	0.00	(700.00)	2,800.00
12/04/97		(700.00)	0.00	(700.00)	3,500.00
01/08/98		(700.00)	0.00	(700.00)	4,200.00
03/16/98		(1,400.00)	0.00	(1,400.00)	5,600.00

JK

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Office of the Chancellor



Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

April 14, 1998

Dr. Walter Bera
Family Therapy Associates
1111 West 22nd Street, Suite 210
Minneapolis, Minnesota 55405

Dear Dr. Bera:

This letter is in response to your query regarding ongoing therapy support for
Fr. Hoepfner, Diocesan Administrator, has approved
continuing support for for an additional six months at which time we
can revisit needs for additional support.

Thank you for all your good work.

Sincerely,

John M. Vitek
Chancellor

cc:

bcc: Mr. John Broadwater
Mr. Mike Saffel
✓ Mr. George Restovich

JK000110

FILE COPY

JK

DIO

Pastoral Center ---
55 West Sanborn

1-202-24-2000
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Office of Diocesan Administrator

Tel: 507-454-4617
Fax: 507-451-8100

April 16, 1998

Rev. Jack Krough
St. Pius X Rectory
1315 12th Ave. NW
Rochester, MN 55901-1744

Dear Jack,

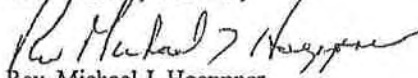
We rejoice these Easter days in the presence and action of our Risen Lord. I hope these special days of Easter find you ever filled with the joy of the Holy Spirit.

I want to put in writing what I mentioned to you on Tuesday, April 14, i.e. that I am reinstating your faculties as a priest in good standing of the Diocese of Winona. Jack, I am also pleased to appoint you as chaplain for the motherhouse of the Sisters of the Third Order Regular of St. Francis of the Congregation of our Lady of Lourdes. Your past pastoral experience, your generosity and goodness and your many talents will serve the sisters well. Your renewed appreciation for health and life will be a source of strength for many as they move through the different stages of their own life-changes. Your commitment to spiritual depth will be an enrichment for them in their own journey as religious women. I ask that, in addition to your duties as chaplain, you also continue to serve on our tribunal as Fr. McGrath, our judicial vicar, directs. You are also free to continue the commitment you have to the National Guard.

Jack, I need be specific that these duties and these alone are your responsibilities. You are free to join in concelebrations of Masses in other settings but you are not to be in one-to-one situations with young men. As you carry out your responsibilities, you are to do so meeting regularly with your support team and with proper supervision in place. You are to continue to be faithful to your after-care program. Please continue to meet with me regularly to review how things are going for you. Arrangements for your financial compensation as well as for your room and board are being worked out and will be spelled out in writing as they are finalized. This assignment is given for a normal term, with the usual provisions of canon law, with the added provision that it will be reviewed by our new bishop who will be free to change it or even cancel it if he so wishes.

I am happy that you are able to continue your ministry, Jack, now as chaplain at Assisi Heights. We are grateful to _____ and the entire administrative team of the sisters as well as to the administrative team for the motherhouse. I know you will continue to work closely with these sisters as you minister. We are grateful, also, to _____ and _____ and to Fr. Suprenant for opening Pius X rectory to you as a place for you to stay. May the Good Lord continue to guide you in you life that you, like St. Paul, might be able to pass on to others what you first receive. If at any time I can be of assistance to you, just let me know.

Your Brother, In Christ,



Rev. Michael J. Hoepfner
Administrator, Diocese of Winona

cc. Mr. John Vitek, Chancellor

JK000111

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

Office of the Chancellor

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

April 20, 1998

CONFIDENTIAL

Dear :

This letter serves to inform you that Rev. Jack Krough has been assigned by Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Diocesan Administrator to serve as Chaplain of the Sisters of the Third Order Regular of St. Francis of the Congregation of Our Lady of Lourdes at Assisi Heights, effective April 17, 1998. He will be living in residence at St. Pius X parish rectory, Rochester. This is public information. If you have any questions about this matter you may direct them to Rev. Michael Hoepfner at the Diocese of Winona, 507-454-4643.

Also, effective April 30, 1998, I will no longer be with the Diocese of Winona. I will continue to keep you in my prayers that you will find peace in your heart. You may direct all future requests to Fr. Michael Hoepfner, Diocesan Administrator. Peace to you.

Sincerely,



John M. Vitek
Chancellor

FILE COPY

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

Office of the Chancellor

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

April 20, 1998

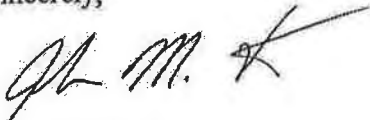
CONFIDENTIAL

Dear Mr. . . . :

This letter serves to inform you that Rev. Jack Krough has been assigned by Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Diocesan Administrator to serve as Chaplain of the Sisters of the Third Order Regular of St. Francis of the Congregation of Our Lady of Lourdes at Assisi Heights, effective April 17, 1998. He will be living in residence at St. Pius X parish rectory, Rochester. This is public information. If you have any questions about this matter you may direct them to Rev. Michael Hoepfner at the Diocese of Winona, 507-454-4643.

Also, effective April 30, 1998, I will no longer be with the Diocese of Winona. I will continue to keep you in my prayers that you will find peace in your heart. You may direct all future requests to Fr. Michael Hoepfner, Diocesan Administrator. Peace to you.

Sincerely,



John M. Vitek
Chancellor

JK000389

JK

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

DE

CO DOA 388
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Office of the Tribunal

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-0106

24 June 1998

Assisi Heights
1001 14th St. NW Ste. 200
Rochester, MN 55901

Dea

I am writing after our telephone conversation this morning to confirm our arrangements regarding Father Jack Krough.

It is my understanding that you will arrange an appointment with Father Krough to complete arrangements for accountability and supervision through _____, who is his immediate supervisor in his work as Chaplain to the Sisters who reside at Assisi Heights.

At some point in the near future I would like to meet with _____ and Father Krough to put in place whatever reporting procedures that would be mutually beneficial to the Academy and the Diocese in terms of our responsibility to supervise.

Thank you very much for your kindness and cooperation. With prayerful best wishes, I have the honor to be,

Sincerely yours in Christ,



Reverend Edward F. McGrath, J.C.L.
Vicar Judicial

file

JK000112

JK

DI

FILE COPY

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn

PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

Office of Diocesan Administrator

July 13, 1998

Assisi Heights - Suite 100
1001 NW 14th St
Rochester MN 55901-2511

Dear

Thank you for setting aside the time to visit regarding Father Jack Krough and his work with you there at Assisi Heights. As I mentioned to you at the end of our discussion, I want to set down in writing my main recollections of the matters we covered yesterday. They are:

1. That you and your sisters are pleased with the work Father Krough is doing for you. You will continue to work to designate the sister who will monitor that work to make sure that Father Krough demonstrates to your satisfaction as employee and my satisfaction as the Administrator of the Diocese that he presents no reasonable risk of harm. I would like to have a regular report from the sister monitor of Father Krough for our file that things continue to go well. I believe we discussed that regular report could be given in writing or verbally to Father McGrath. Father McGrath remains the main contact person here in the diocese for this and how ever he and the sister monitor want to work our this regular reporting is fine with me.

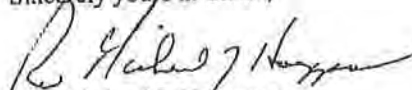
2. The work that Father Krough does should be assigned through his monitor or whomever you designate for this. It should be work that normally would come under work that a chaplain at Assisi Heights could do. If there is a group that meets there and would want Father Krough to work with them for whatever reason, that particular assignment or task should be cleared through the sister leadership at Assisi Heights and then assigned to Father Krough. I think a written description of the work would be good for the file along with the cautions that must necessarily be in place. The work therefore comes under a suitable work for the chaplain and caution is taken that there is no unreasonable risk. I know that this might be a bit cumbersome for now but I think it is the proper way to go about things.

3. I do not envision Father Krough taking on more hours of work at this time than what we have spoken of. You mentioned he may be requesting of his aftercare people that he may be allowed to do more than 25 hours of work a week. My thought is that he needs to demonstrate that the 25 hours of work a week that he does now is not too much and develop a good track record with what he's doing before he takes on more. As I mentioned, there is a possibility that he might do more with the marriage tribunal or something off the hill outside the realm of his chaplain work for you if the 25 hours becomes a problem. At any rate, my thought primarily in this regard is that he not extend himself past 25 hours.

4. Father Krough needs to be sure that all that is stipulated in his aftercare contract has put in place. You mentioned that all the pieces have not been put in place yet. This to me is important and high priority. Father McGrath will continue to review what those pieces are and check to see that Father Krough has them all in place.

Let me again thank you for your willingness to allow Father Krough to be chaplain. I am happy to hear that the sisters are pleased with his ministry. He certainly does have many talents. At any time you and I need to have a review of how things are going, just let me know.

Sincerely yours in Christ,



Rev. Michael J. Hoepfner
Administrator, Diocese of Winona

MJH/jt

cc: Rev. Jack Krough
Rev. Edward McGrath

JK000113

JK



14-Jul-98

Rev Michael Hoepfner
Diocese of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Father Hoepfner:

Thank you for sending me a copy of your letter to _____ summarizing your discussion. It reminded me again of the importance of open and regular communication. I am appreciative of the commitment of so many people in support of my ministry and healing. The best expression of my gratitude is to continue the hard work of recovery and ministry. I would like to offer you a summary of my work in both areas.

It has been almost three months since I began my ministry at Assisi Heights. I continue to find the ministry challenging and fulfilling. It is exciting to celebrate the Eucharist and preach to a community with such a deep commitment to discipleship. I find myself reading and studying, not only for my own enrichment, but also from a desire to seriously explore the mysteries of faith with people who are already living rich lives in service of the Gospel. The encouragement they give me makes the work easy. Besides my sacramental ministry, there are ample opportunities to minister to the sisters one-to-one. With the support of the Pastoral Care Team I have begun regular visitation to the sisters in the health care unit. Of course, I also meet with other sisters both formally and informally. Along with my pastoral care work, I am also working with the Assisi Heights Worship Team. The Assisi Community Center has also encouraged me to become involved in their Contemplation Focus Group. Of course, all of this fits beautifully with my hopes and interests. This is exciting ministry for me.

While spending 20 to 25 hours at Assisi Heights, more time is spent at St Pius Rectory. I really enjoy living with this community of priests. Father Surprenant has welcomed me into his home and made me very comfortable. As pastor of the place I live and as a member of my support team, I keep him informed about my work and life. He knows where I am at and what I am doing. But especially valuable to me is his willingness to talk about the challenges, successes, and areas of growth in my life. It is wonderful to have someone with whom I can share both insights and confusions from therapy and my new ministry, sometimes on a daily basis. I cannot travel this path alone, and he is certainly one of the key people traveling beside me. I also enjoyed living with Father Cronin and look forward to the time ahead with Father Cook.

I have been faithful to the terms of my contract with St Luke Institute and the diocese. I attend Twelve Step meetings weekly and now have a temporary 12-Step sponsor. I continue to see _____ weekly, unless he is out of town. This has been especially fruitful. The information that I was able to provide him from SLI has allowed us to really focus our work

J.L.KROUGH

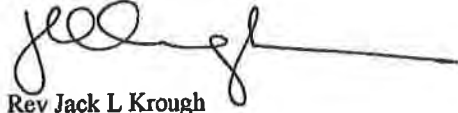
JK000114

JK

together. I look forward to each session. My support group remains central to my recovery work. We have had two formal meetings. The first was the reentry workshop that from SLI led. I think both of us were excited at the way the group so quickly began its work. The second meeting was two weeks ago. I am in weekly contact with at least some members of the group either in person, by phone, or through e-mail. When something significant is happening, all members of the group know about it. What a gift it is to have people with whom I can share my joys and sorrows, knowing that I will get honest and supportive feedback from each. I am also in regular contact with by phone and e-mail. The connection that she provides me to SLI is very important. Most important of all, the spiritual work that I began at SLI still provides the central focus of each day.

I appreciate the trust that the Diocese of Winona has placed in me. I can only assure you that I will continue the therapeutic work that I have promised to do. I pray that with the passage of time your trust in me will prove to have been a wise decision.

Fraternally in Christ,

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Jack L Krough", with a long horizontal line extending to the right.

Rev Jack L Krough

CC:

Rev Paul Surprenant
Rev Edward McGrath

My Support Team

JK000115

JK



Sisters of Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

We desire the spirit of God at work in all of us."

July 17, 1998

Rev. Michael J. Hoepfner
Administrator, Diocese of Winona
Diocesan Pastoral Center -- Box 588
Winona, MN 55987-0588

CONFIDENTIAL

Dear Father Hoepfner:

PEACE and all GOOD to you! I'm writing to thank you for your letter of July 13, 1998 summarizing our conversation of July 7th, in which you and I were able to clarify some points concerning our arrangement for the services of our new Assisi Heights chaplain, Fr. Jack Krough. As you noted in your letter, our community here at Assisi Heights has been genuinely pleased with Father Krough's service to us in these first months of his liturgical and pastoral duties among us. It is obvious to us that Fr. Jack is truly appreciative of this ministry site, and sees it as a good opportunity for sharing and growing together with us in the spiritual life. We see this experience of mutuality as a sign of God's blessing!

I found our exchange very helpful in accenting the "reasonableness" of what is expected of us as a Congregation (and specifically of me and of the person who will serve as Fr. Jack's immediate work supervisor) vis-a-vis the Diocese with regard to our respective obligations in assuring that, to the best of our knowledge, Fr. Krough "presents no reasonable risk of harm". I believe that we are settling into an arrangement that can seem appropriate to all parties concerned (Fr. Jack himself, our Congregation via his work supervisor, and hopefully, the Diocese, represented by Fr. Ed McGrath, and ultimately, yourself).

Following our conversation, I have taken several steps to put these assurances in place. The person who will serve as Fr. Jack's immediate supervisor, both with regard to his work here at Assisi Heights and as the "link" for supervision between us and the Diocese, will be _____ As I had explained to you during our conversation, _____ who as Director of Health and Spirituality for the Assisi Heights community and a member of the Assisi Heights Leadership Team would have normally been the person to fulfill this role, has requested to not carry this responsibility in this instance. Consequently, _____ will fulfill that role. (This is the main reason it has taken a bit of time to put these arrangements in place -- it has required a series of meetings in order to arrive at everyone's comfortability with this arrangement.)

_____ will be a great asset to this ongoing reporting relationship. Not only is she presently serving as the Chairperson of the Worship Committee and a member of the Liturgy Planning Team (and in such capacity has a regular working relationship with Fr. Jack), but as a member of our former

JK000116

JK

equivalent to a **half-time salary and benefits** in exchange for Fr. Krough's services. It is also my understanding that the Diocese is committed to covering the other half of his remuneration.

I also want to say, with regard to the 4th point in your July 13th letter, that I believe the few points of the aftercare contract that I had some question about have now been responded to; Father Jack has explained the adaptation of these few points, and to my knowledge, all is in accord with the approval of his contact person from Saint Luke's Institute.

Hopefully, the above points cover the items needed to convey that we are now ready to move ahead with the "living out" of these arrangements. I am most grateful to you, Father Mike, for the genuine concern and compassionate stance I sense in your dealings with this overall situation. I continue to believe that if we all respond to this delicate matter in the spirit of the Gospel, then God will surely bless us, one and all, with grace and peace.

Your sister,

Cc. Rev. Jack Krough

Rev. Edward McGrath

JK000117

JK



Sisters of Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

"We desire the Spirit of God at work in all of us."

July 17, 1998

RECEIVED JUL 20 1998

CONFIDENTIAL

Rev. Edward F. McGrath
Vicar Judicial -- Diocese of Winona
Pastoral Center -- Box 588
Winona, MN 55987-0588

Dear Father McGrath:

PEACE and all GOOD to you! At long last I am able to follow up on our several phone messages and your letter dated June 24, 1998, regarding our efforts to put in place a suitable reporting arrangement regarding the assignment of Fr. Jack Krough as our chaplain here at Assisi Heights. As you know, I thought we were well on our way to completing this task back in the first week of July...but extenuating circumstances made it necessary to make a second set of arrangements. (See accompanying copy of a letter to Father Michael Hoepfner regarding a shift in reporting relationships.)

At any rate, it has finally been possible to work out the details on this end, and as of today, [redacted] has begun the responsibility of replacing [redacted] in the role of Father Krough's immediate work supervisor, as well as the person who will be serving us as our congregational representative in the reporting arrangement required by the Diocese. As noted in the accompanying letter, [redacted] well-equipped to serve all of us in this capacity, and I am most grateful to her for her willingness to assume this role.

It is my understanding that you are now free to contact Father Krough and [redacted] to arrange a meeting time to discuss how to proceed with developing some reporting procedures that will, as you have indicated, be mutually beneficial to all the parties involved. In my exchange with Father Jack and [redacted] today, as well as in my recent visit with Father Hoepfner, it is evident that we are *all* interested not only in "covering the bases" to assure that our respective responsibilities have been clarified and are mutually understood, but most especially in each contributing our part by way of support for the continuing healing process that this delicate matter requires.

I, for my part, stand in support of the development of this reporting relationship, and I pray a special blessing on the three of you as you begin to work out a method that not only responds to the requirements involved, but also demonstrates a mutual respect for the individual perspectives in the process. As you are probably aware, Father Krough can be reached either at his home phone at St. Pius Rectory (507-281-0944) or at his extension at Assisi Heights (507-282-7441, Ext. 240) -- both numbers have a voice mail service for messages;

JK000118

JK

can also be reached through the Assisi Heights switchboard number -- she has a pager rather than an extension number.

I believe the above information will allow you to proceed with what is next to be done. Thank you most kindly for your *patience* in putting all of this in place! May the Spirit of God lead the way....

Your sister,

Cc. Rev. Jack Krough

Rev. Michael Hoepfner

JK000119

JK

To: Rev. Edward McGrath

From:

Re: Monthly Report

Date: August 28, 1998

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS:

These observations:

- * Jack is faithful to his presence/hours at work. He is well prepared as president/Minister and is fully present to that ministry and us (the congregation)
- * He is present and participative as a member of our Worship Committee

I trust his response to me as regards:

- * Participation in 12-step programs
- * Faithful to support groups
- * Expression of feelings about how his ministry with us is for him, both negative and positive (clear by far the greater!)

COMMENTS CONCERNING THE CONTRACT AND THE "BUDDING SIGNS":

We mutually agree that the contract is faithfully being lived, with the hope of some minor change as he experiences the Continuing Care Program this very week at St. Luke's.

I have no reason to believe, nor does he, that the Budding Signs are threatening at this time. Jack feels good about how he is with us and the spiritual health that continues to be active because of his ministry with us and our response to him as the active flight community. I support him in his recovery program.

SIGNED:

JK000120

JK

Pastoral Center --
55 West Sanborn

DE
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Office of the Tribunal

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

14 September 1998
Feast of the Exaltation of the Holy Cross

Assisi Heights
1001 14th St. NW Ste. 100
Rochester, MN 55901

Dear

Thank you for your report of 28 August. I have reviewed it, and I thank you for your efforts and commend you for your ongoing support and supervision of Fr. Krough.

I have one central concern with the method of reporting, and it occurs in some form throughout the report. When we spoke and I asked for a concrete report, I meant something more like this:

"Jack is faithful to his presence / hours at work . . ."
and I know this because I . . .
"He is well prepared as presider / homilist . . ."
I base my opinion on daily Mass, especially . . .
"He is present and participates . . ."
His participation has the quality of . . .

Especially if you say, "I trust his response to me as regards . . . 12 step programs . . . support groups," please indicate what grounds your trust. For example, direct observation, "I drove him to the meeting," or "I attended an open meeting with him" or the like. When you report an expression of feelings, then please note what the feelings expressed are.

In these types of reports, I believe it is necessary to back up every statement of a factual matter with a concrete verification of a statement of opinion with the basis on which one asserts an opinion. This, I believe, will help the Administrator and the next Bishop of Winona with the ongoing evaluation of Fr. Krough's faculties for priestly ministry.

With prayerful best wishes on this wonderful feast, and ever mindful of our particular participation in the mystery of the Cross as we assist Fr. Krough in recovery, I am

Sincerely yours in Christ,


Reverend Edward F. McGrath

cc: Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Diocesan Administrator

JK000121

JK

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: October 6, 1998

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS:

These observations:

- * I am present most often as Jack presides at Eucharist and observe first hand that he is well prepared to do that. There is no hurry, there are pauses that say to me he is reflective and present to the action he is performing.
- * I affirm and delight in the manner in which he is steeping himself in what is our particular Franciscan Charism. In the preaching and/or speaking personally about that I observe that he not only encourages us in this way of life, but I hear him speaking about how he is affected by this new-found spirituality.
- * I have seen him as he participates in the life of our Sisters by way of the Sacrament of Reconciliation as well as being available to whatever the conversant needs of a Sister may be. Again as I hear him speak of that it seems to be done very deliberately and with patient understanding and assurance of the consolation of God. I continue to observe with appreciation his lack of 'hurrying to get it done' stance.
- * He speaks about this or that commitment to personal therapy and group therapy so I believe he is faithful to that, even if it means he cannot commit to a particular meeting time or expresses that he will be late for a particular meeting.
- * I know he is faithful to his day off!
- * Several times this past month, he has expressed feelings about how things go for him, both the positive and negative sides of that.
- * I observe that he is choosing activities that are for his continued spiritual growth when I see him preparing for programs he will be doing at the Heights on prayer and meditation, as well those in which he participates, Tai Chi for example.

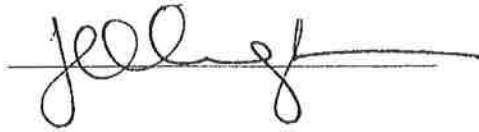
COMMENTS CONCERNING THE CONTRACT AND THE "BUDDING SIGNS":

- * I can see that Jack is faithful to what are the spiritual components of the contract because he speaks of such: what comes to him in meditation, what are the fruits of his spiritual reading...his liking poetry and sharing the poignancy of that in conversation, homilies etc...
- * I do not observe him relating to adolescents or vulnerable men at Assisi Heights.
- * I do not observe signs of depression.
- * He shared with us as a community that he participated in the Diocesan Presbyteral meeting on October 5-7.

JK000125

JK

SIGNED:

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to be "J. Long", written over a horizontal line. The signature is cursive and stylized.

JK000126

JK



**Sisters of
Saint Francis**

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

*'We desire the
spirit of God at
work in all of us.'*

October 14, 1998

Dear Ed,

Here I am again, apologizing for tardiness. But... truly the end of the month has been hard to work with schedule-wise: when I was available, Jack was not and when he was, I was not, and all valid and good things going on. So, this is late, but our times are getting in sync and we are setting up a schedule a month ahead of time so as not to get caught in the crunch at the last minute. Our ministries are very diverse, though for some of them we are together.

In my opinion all goes well! And, I hope in yours as you read the enclosed. I think I am catching on to the concreteness!

I pray good days of Autumn for you!

Peace and all good.

JK000127

JK

DEPARTMENT OF REVENUE
POLY BOX 600
MINNAPOLIS, MINNESOTA 55407-0600

Parson's Center --
55 West Sanborn

Circle 110-101-101

id: 887854-0043
Date: 9/27/10 11:51:08

16 October 1998

Assisi Heights
Rochester, MN 55903

Dear

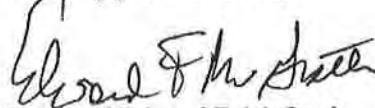
Thank you once again for your supervisory work. I am confident that over time we will get this smoothed out.

A couple of more observations since I spoke with you on the telephone. The form of the report will need to change so that either signatures appear on the first page or the computer indicates that page one is 1 of 2 and page 2 is 2 of 2, or initial the first page so any future examination will not dispute that the signatures belong to the document.

You mentioned that you did not observe any signs of depression, then what did you observe? Once again, the need for concreteness is best expressed as backing up statements of opinion with facts and statements of observation with an account of what was observed.

With prayerful best wishes, I am

Sincerely yours in Christ,



Reverend Edward F. McGrath

JK000128

JK

To: Rev. Ed McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: November 3, 1998

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS:

- * There continues to be the observation of the carefulness, preparedness, and attentiveness with which Jack presides at Eucharist. This includes the awareness of the enlarged group of town folk, out of town, or even out of the country folks that participate in our Sunday Eucharists!
- * Jack was present and active in our Worship Committee meeting for the month of November.
- * A part of that meeting was to finalize plans for our Ministry Day. Jack and one of our Sisters were responsible for workshops for our Sisters in these various ministries and while I was not present for them, I have heard how much Jack was affirming and encouraging the Sisters in the manner in which they performed ministries at Eucharist, while at the same time offering suggestions and enrichment that enhance the ministries *and* the ministers.
- * Jack was present for this Ministry Day on October 17, received the input of the two presenters, and then presided at Eucharist during which he commissioned these ministers.
- * It was in visiting after this that Jack indicated some discomfort with some of what was presented, and his not "being there" yet. We talked about the tension in this, and his willingness to simply continue the dialogue and live through this.
- * Now, as a follow up to this ministry day, Sisters have indicated some topics for future enrichment by way of what we call, "Fireside Chats", and Jack had indicated earlier that he is willing to do any of these that fit his area of expertise.
- * There has been a change in our Pastoral Care Department, and as a result of this Jack has agreed to spend 3 more hours a week in that capacity, indicating that it is within the agreed hours of ministry per week.
- * While I do not observe this because it is not in the area of my ministry, I presume that he is faithful to hearing confessions on the health care floors twice monthly. I do observe him doing this for our more active Sisters in Lourdes Chapel twice monthly.

COMMENTS CONCERNING THE CONTRACT AND THE "BUDDING SIGNS":


- * In our monthly visit Jack has indicated to me that
 - he is faithful to weekly 12-Step programs.
 - he is faithful to weekly monitoring his behaviors with his 12-Step Sponsor, his therapist, and his support team.
 - he is conscious and careful of boundary issues.
 - he is within the limit of number of hours he works at Assisi Heights weekly.
 - he is faithful to having Monday as a day off. This I do observe!
 - he has a Spiritual Director and meets with this person regularly.
 - he is faithful to the committed daily spiritual practices: meditation, Liturgy of the Hours, and spiritual reading.

JK000129

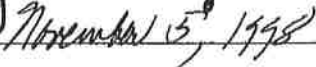
JK

- * I periodically ask about the HALT (hungry, angry, lonely, tired) signs and he has indicated to me that he appropriately takes care of this with his therapist. If I observe changes of behavior that may cause me to ask about this I would do that. That has not been necessary up to this point.
- * I do not observe Jack having an exclusive or secret relationship while at the Heights, which is the only place I see him or need to see him.
- * I do not observe that Jack feels inferior, unworthy, abandoned or rejected while he is ministering at the Heights.

SIGNED:

 _____

DATE:

 _____

JK000130



**Sisters of
Saint Francis**

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

November 3, 1998

Dear Ed,

Another month gone by — it is hard to believe that soon the notion of "Holiday" will be swirling around us! The call of this day is another reminder.

I hope the enclosed fulfills my responsibility to you as far as Jack is concerned. In my opinion all goes well and he is faithful to hard work around all of it.

So much then until December!

May days be full of thanks for you!

Peace and all good!

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

JK

MEMORANDUM

TO: FILE
FROM: FR. EDW. McGRATH
RE: FR. JACK KROUGH
DATE 19 NOVEMBER 1998



In conference with Fr. Jack Krough and Fr. Paul Surprenaunt, I reviewed Fr. Jack's continuing care contract and recovery plan.

Regarding his addiction, we had a significant discussion on how he perceives vulnerability. He is strongly attracted to men with AIDs and in serious emotional distress. I mentioned the context of ministry at Assisi Heights (and other events). He said if there were a crisis calling for his ministry, he would intervene and refer. He has no problem doing this. He has no unsupervised contact with adolescents and has no secret friendships. Fr. Surprenaunt confirms this. He reports no relapses.

Regarding spiritual and emotional health, the only area that is not being covered is a treatment small group. There is nothing available in Rochester of this type. He is faithful to meetings with his therapist and attends recovery and 12 step groups at Guesthouse, in the Twin Cities, Owatonna, Winona and Rochester. Family remains an area to work on. One sister knows his situation. His parents and other sister do not know and, he indicates, are unlikely to know. He is in control of his spending, he tells me. He said he is faithful to prayer and meditation. I asked about spiritual reading; his reading centers on recovery literature. He disclosed that his spiritual director is

Regarding physical health, Jack appears to be in good health. His affect was calm and appropriate with moments of seriousness and levity. Absent from my previous experience of his affect was a dark glowering. He is currently not using medications. I asked if he is using alternatives or herbals. He acknowledges that he is using something to help him sleep - with the knowledge of his therapist. He has a therapeutic massage session 2x / mo with: I questioned whether was the best person for him for this, being member of our presbyterate not laicized and currently living in a public homosexual union celebrated with certain rites. He assured me that is very professional. I supported him in the need for massage, but I continue to question the wisdom of yet do not disapprove.

Regarding work at Assisi Heights, the role of priest and the tension of the current state of religious life came up. He has been involved in discussions concerning the location of the chair. He reported that he told the committee he "was not there yet" regarding their thoughts about location or absence of the chair. He said the group was able to receive his comments and respect them. In my experience, I commented that is a bit of a change from the overt anger of 15 years ago.

Jack seems to me to be on top of his budding signs. I affirmed his recovery and encouraged him to see how he could be a help in the presbyterate having devoted time and energy to things that really matter: spirituality, time in reflection, and focused work.

JK000132

JK

19 Nov 98

→ mtg w/ Jack Krough & Paul Sogans

g-5: vulnerability, anyone w/ AIDS
severe emotional distress.

no relapse

no recent fundshps.

Emotion health

Stressor:

to visit LA: not a healthy sit., make no a good per
few been early, processed experience.

Bill Beham would have to strip it out.

every other week bars, met w/ Darnice, previously weekly

January - March St. Luke's concern

small group therapy not being done

day off: read, walk, cities, movie. visit funds.

family: there's a project

determines what their relationship ~~to~~ will look like

over \$50 broke in side.

spiritual reading. T. Keating, 1. therapy w/o a therapist

Francine's poem.

Therapeutic massage.

Paul - expressed w/ Jack's sermon.

JK000133

Pattern - one case of some length.

Agil4 through - aloof, staff photographs a by deal
 accepted a step - the chemistry & intimate.
 He was one of the more fun teachers humor, easy going
 widely update w/ staff

Victory

- saw him act Troubled
- had poorly expressive elements injuries
- elevated to be caretaker

Used as consultant

1st molestation in dark room, new parties in Paccelli
 too close, physical contact, wearing, "Camradem"
 "would hold his flicker while he urinates in a bucket"
 then he would get a stroke

had to take a leak, tipped the article but
 "it had to remove his penis"

pull it out he said he couldn't go
 table turned - he wanted to do the same
 urinate, hole in bucket, they laughed

Emotion - He said he did not think he should have done what he
 did: not bad, not something physical
 but since no one heard the same insight in life can
 aid

felt emotionally backed into a corner

JK

K thought he had to leave
- Give key to front door, double room & camera

- K thought that convince her to stay

- K drew scenarios of future work

K. praise his philosophy, art -

trip to citus K critic: not advanced enough to appreciate
would be allowed to go
had to place to go.

Trademark of K. pictures treatment
all indignity

had to be forgiven & reassure her that he is
is not a flake.

is angry at himself

79-80 Genis State

talked K about of services.

K. like he say - 3 pm can believe

If you thought so little of me I'll have to kill myself
so K demonstration -

80-81 denied to meet with him in rectory

a gift he wanted to give, but not a sexual thing
2nd or 3rd th he refused

K would explain

2-3 yr abuse

Friday 26th

low a message -

JK



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

Nov. 30, 1998

Dear Ed,

Blessed days of Advent, Christmas and
the New Year.

All goes well here!

Peace and all good,

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

JK000136

JK

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: November 30, 1998

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS—CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * What is different this month is that Jack was showing some signs of depression, and did what he needed to do: visited about this with his therapist and his support group. As of now the symptoms have disappeared. This did not keep Jack from performing his ministry.
- * Jack continues to adjust to the expanded role of Pastoral Care. He cares for this with the Co-director of Assisi Heights as regards expectations---not taking on more than is appropriate. He is holding to the three hours a week, knowing that there could be many more hours spent doing this. These additional hours complete the hours of ministry contracted by the congregation as well as what was strongly encouraged by St. Luke's.
- * His telling me that when experiences are shared with his therapist, support group and persons from St. Luke's, he is affirmed of the appropriateness of his responses and behaviors.
- * His continued sharing in conversations and/or homilies what he is praying, reading, reflecting, etc...This lets me know he is being faithful to those parts of his contract/budding signs.
- * He shares with me and others poetry he writes which speaks of what is at a deeper level of his experiences. This creativity is a very significant part of on-going recovery.
- * He is present and active in the planning of our Advent season here at the Heights, and all that entails: environment, ministries, Desert Day, Communal Reconciliation etc... While this will be more demanding of him, it taps into a creative part of him and he shares that freely.

SIGNED: _____

DATE: _____


12/3/98

JK000137

**INTERSTATE
INSURANCE
GROUP**

December 18, 1998

CERTIFIED MAIL P 241 531815
55 East Monroe Street
Chicago, Illinois 60603
RETURN RECEIPT REQUESTED 312-346-6400
FAX 312-346-5748

Most Reverend Bernard J. Harrington
Diocese of Winona
55 W. Sanborn
P O Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987

Re: Insured: Diocese of Winona
Claimant:
Claim No: 01-98L117055 (MF)

Dear Bishop Harrington:

We are sending this letter to you as the representative for the Diocese of Winona. This letter references a sexual misconduct claim with respect to _____ and Father Krough, High School, and the Diocese of Winona and will serve to inform you of IFC's position with respect to coverage under the policies.

Interstate Fire & Casualty Company (hereinafter referred to as IFC) provided excess liability coverage to the Diocese of Winona from July 1, 1978 through July 1, 1979 under policy number 83-0152609. This policy was renewed for the subsequent policy periods of July 1, 1979 through July 1, 1980, and July 1, 1981 through July 1, 1982. The policy was renewed from July 1, 1982 through July 1, 1983, July 1, 1983 through July 1, 1984, and July 1, 1984 through July 1, 1985 under policy number 83-0169196. These policies provided excess general liability indemnity coverage with limits of \$4.8 million, excess \$200,000 provided by the Diocese's self-insured retention and Lloyds. The policy was renewed one last time for the policy period of July 1, 1985 through July 1, 1986 under policy number 83-0172436 and provided excess general liability indemnity coverage with limits of \$800,000, excess \$200,000 provided by the Diocese's self-insured retention and Lloyds.

IFC's policy of insurance is "following form" to the Lloyds policy, and the provisions of the immediate underlying policies are incorporated as part of this policy.

You have reported that _____ claims Father Krough from the Diocese of Winona, and more specifically from _____ High School located in _____ Minnesota, sexually abused him. The dates of alleged sexual abuse have not been provided to date. However, the Diocese has reason to believe that the sexual abuse took place sometime around July 1, 1978 or sometime thereafter.

Interstate Fire & Casualty Company
Chicago Insurance Company
Interstate Indemnity Company

Member Companies of The Fireman's Fund Insurance Group

JK000392

Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington
Re. Diocese of Winona
December 18, 1998
Page 2 of 5

has alleged that while a member of the Photography Club at the high school, he was sexually abused by Father Krough, who was the faculty advisor at that time. is

IFC's policies are excess in nature and, therefore, are not triggered until the underlying policies are exhausted. Liability shall attach to IFC only after the underlying insurer(s) have paid or have been held liable to pay the full amount of the respective ultimate net loss liability.

Coverage attaches only for those persons who qualify as an insured. Generally, insured is defined to include an official or employee of the named insured while acting within the course and scope of his duties as such.

Based on the information provided, it is IFC's opinion that if the allegations are proven, Father Krough was acting outside the course and scope of his Priestly duties and for his own self-gratification when he allegedly sexually assaulted . Father Krough, therefore, would not qualify as an insured under IFC's policy, and IFC would not indemnify Father Krough nor allow his defense costs to be incorporated into the underlying limits and/or self-insured retention in order to reduce same, so as to activate IFC's excess liability coverage. Furthermore, there is no coverage whatsoever for Father Krough personally due to intentional torts or acts.

The intentional infliction of physical and/or emotional injury falls outside the scope of coverage under the definition of "occurrence" which generally requires that any such injury or damage for which coverage is claimed be neither expected nor intended.

Further, the policy specifically excludes liability for assault and battery committed by or at the direction of anyone claiming coverage thereunder.

Should it be proven that the Diocese of Winona knew or should have known of Father Krough's proclivities, these activities, knowledge of the diocese of his activities, and failure to take any action to prevent his inappropriate conduct, if proven, could void coverage. See Diocese of Winona vs. Interstate Fire & Casualty Co., 89 F.3d 1386 (8th Cir. 1996). As noted above, there is no coverage for expected or intended personal injury.

Further, should it be determined that the alleged acts of misconduct by the Diocese of Winona are derivative of and inextricably intertwined with the actions of Father Krough who, as pointed out above, has no coverage under this policy for reasons previously stated, then it could very well be that the Diocese itself would likewise be deprived of coverage for the claims made against it by the plaintiff herein arising from the alleged misconduct of Father Krough, since its liability would be derived from that conduct. See for example Canutillo Independent School District vs. National Union Fire Insurance Company, 99 F.3d 695 (5th Cir. 1996); Cuervo vs. Cincinnati

Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington
Re. Diocese of Winona
December 18, 1998
Page 3 of 5

Insurance Company, 665 N.E.2d 1121 (Ohio 1996); Jane Doe vs. Ordinary Mutual, 32 Cal. App. 4th 643 (Cal. App. 1995). In that connection, we wish to point out that neither IFC's excess indemnity policy nor Lloyds underlying primary indemnity policy, to which IFC's policy follows form, contain a "severability of interest" clause so often found in standard ordinary insurance policies which requires the insurer to treat the claims against multiple insureds under its policy of insurance as if a separate contract of insurance had been written in favor of each of them. Therefore, IFC reserves its right to decline coverage to the Diocese of Winona on these grounds should the facts as developed in this claim when coupled with the law of the appropriate jurisdiction compels such a conclusion.

An occurrence is defined as an accident or happening or event which unexpectedly and unintentionally results in personal injury or property damage during the policy period. Since the language of the Lloyd's policy, incorporated into IFC's "following form" excess policy, requires the "accident" and the "injury" to occur within the policy period, IFC would have absolutely no coverage for any claim for conduct which occurred prior to July 1, 1978 or after July 1, 1986, since the time frame for such claims would be outside the coverage issued by IFC to the Diocese of Winona. We respectfully decline coverage for any alleged misconduct occurring before July 1, 1978 or after July 1, 1986. Also, please note that the Sexual or Physical Abuse Exclusion Endorsement on Policy Number #83-0172436 would bar coverage for claims arising out of sexual or physical abuse or molestation by an insured for the time period of July 1, 1985 through July 1, 1986.

The allegations made by _____ indicate the sexual abuse may have covered more than one policy period. If the alleged abuse did in fact cover more than one policy period, IFC would like to make it clear that it does not adopt or agree with the "first encounter" theory which has been advanced by other insurers in molestation cases. It is IFC's position that any portion of injuries sustained during any policy period will trigger that policy period's SIR and underlying insurance. Further, it may well be that injury or molestation sustained at more than one location would result in multiple occurrences during any one policy period.

In support of IFC's position, we wish to advise you that the United States Court of Appeals for the Fifth Circuit has adopted IFC's position in Society of Roman Catholic Church vs. Interstate Fire & Casualty Co., 26F.3d 1359 (5th Cir. 1994). Under that decision, for each year in which the alleged abuse occurred, the Archdiocese's entire SIR and the underlying layer of coverage would have to be exhausted before any of IFC's excess indemnity coverage for that year would be triggered.

The Ninth Circuit reached a similar result in Interstate Fire & Casualty Co. vs. The Archdiocese of Portland, et al. 35 F.3d 1325 (9th Cir. 1994).

Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington
Re. Diocese of Winona
December 18, 1998
Page 4 of 5

The Seventh Circuit Court of Appeals, in Alan Godfrey Lee. et al v. Interstate Fire & Casualty Company, 86 F.3d 101 (7th Cir. 1996) affirmed IFC's position.

See also Diocese of Winona v. Interstate Fire & Casualty Co., 89 F.3d 1386 (8th Cir. 1996).

IFC further reserves its rights to reimbursement should we expend indemnity dollars and subsequently establish non-coverage.

Please do not interpret this letter as a denial of coverage. Rather, it is simply to advise you that IFC will act upon this loss under a full and complete reservation of rights under the terms of the referenced policies issued to the Diocese of Winona. This reservation of rights is without prejudice to IFC's right to assert any other policy defenses which may be applicable as ascertained during further investigation of the referenced matter. IFC does not waive any of the terms or conditions of the applicable policies and does not waive any of the defenses which may now or hereafter exist for this claim.

IFC would also like to remind you of the continuing obligation of the insured to fully and completely cooperate with IFC in connection with this matter as well as of the insured's obligation to keep IFC fully informed and apprised of developments as this matter proceeds. A noncompliance with this obligation may restrict or bar coverage. Therefore, IFC requests to be copied on all pertinent correspondence and pleadings filed or served. Please add my name to your mailing list for such material when it is forwarded from your law office to Gallagher Bassett Services, Inc. Your cooperation in this area is highly appreciated.

Should you have any questions, please do not hesitate to contact me.

Very truly yours,



Ted G. Wickenhauser
General Adjuster

cc: Cathy Sugayan
Lord, Bissell & Brook
115 S. LaSalle Street
Chicago, IL 60603

JK000395

Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington
Re. Diocese of Winona
December 18, 1998
Page 5 of 5

Tim McNamara
Onebane, Bernard, Torian, Diaz, McNamara & Abell
P O Box 3507
Lafayette, LA 70502-3507

Stephen J. Henne
Gallagher Bassett Services, Inc.
Woodfield Executive Center
1101 Perimeter Drive
Suite 400
Schaumburg, IL 60193

JK

Walter H. Bera, PhD
Licensed Psychologist
Kenwood Professional Building
1111 West 22nd Street-Suite 210
Minneapolis, MN 55405
612-377-9921

**AUTHORIZATION FOR RELEASE OF INFORMATION
AND REQUEST FOR INFORMATION**

NOTICE: Information about you cannot be released to others without your consent. Do not sign this release form unless it is completely filled out and in your best interest. You do have the right to revoke this release at any time.

NAME OF CLIENT: _____ DATE OF BIRTH: _____
ADDRESS: _____

This will authorize: F. J. McGrath, Director of Women
P.O. Box 588
Winona, MN 55982-0588
(name, address and phone number)

To exchange information with: Walter H. Bera, PhD, 1111 West 22nd St.-
Suite 210, Minneapolis, MN 55405

The information released pertains to the date(s): 1998/99

The information to be released is:

- Consultation Reports
- Educational Assessments
- Chemical Dependency Evaluation
- Assessment & Tx.
- Psych Testing
- Summary

Other (specify) F. J. McGrath's Sexual Abuse M.O., Child Grooming +

The information is needed for the following purpose(s): Perpetration Pattern

- Continuity of Care
- Other (specify) Offender Accountability, Supervision & Treatment

This release will expire:
 30 days after termination of treatment

Other (specify) 28-Feb-99

I understand that I may revoke this consent at any time.

SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

(signature of client or guardian)

WITNESS: Walter Bera, PhD DATE: 12.21.98

KROUGH, FR. JACK

JK



5 January 1999

Most Reverend Bernard J. Harrington, D.D.
Bishop of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Bishop Harrington:

Welcome to the Winona Diocese. I pray that your ministry as our bishop will be as fulfilling as it will be challenging. The demands on you at the beginning of your ministry must be staggering; yet I am sure that among your early concerns is my priestly ministry in the diocese. I just want you to know that, when you are ready to see me, I look forward to answering questions and sharing the story of my recovery and return to ministry following treatment at St Luke Institute.

The time since I began the inpatient program at SLI on 6 August 1997 has been both the hardest and most grace-full time in my life. Though the incident that brought me to treatment was nearly two decades old, at the time of my intervention I had serious problems that needed ministry and healing. The compassion of Bishop Vlazny and Father Hoepfner and the challenge and support of the therapy team at SLI were real gifts to me. Equally important was Father Hoepfner and the Consultants' willingness to accept me back into active ministry with an assignment that has been both challenging and supportive. The nearly nine months that I have served as chaplain to the sisters at Assisi Heights has been the happiest time I have known in ministry. My work there has been able to build on the spiritual renewal that I experienced while at St Luke. I am still in a healing process, but I experience a hope that I have not known for many years. I have much for which to be thankful, especially the support of the Franciscan leadership, Fr Paul Surprenant with whom I live, my Continuing Care Therapist at SLI, my support group here, and friends like who have stood beside me through it all.

Again, I know that this is a very busy time for you; but I want you to know that I am ready to talk when I arrive "at the top of the pile." You can always call me on my private line at (507) 741-0944 or at Assisi Heights at (507) 282-7441, ext. 2200.

Fraternally in Christ

Rev Jack L Krough

J.L.KROUGH

JK000139



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: January 8, 1999

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS—CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * I observed and Jack confirmed that for him as for most of us Christmas is a stretching time. He cared for himself by cutting back on some things, while taking on some extra things during the season of Advent. Scheduling that way helped him maintain a balance. He feels good about these decisions and the programs he did during this time. I observed serenity around all this.
- * I observe and again Jack confirms that the Healthcare position is fitting better and better. He continues to learn from doing it and has sought information about pastoral care of older and more infirm persons which is long term and very different from pastoral care in a hospital. It is gratifying for him to be with our Sisters. He can more easily relate to those who suffer from depression because of his own struggle with this.
- * About the depression which was mentioned last month—it has lifted, and was cared for appropriately with his counselor.
- * Christmas, personally by Jack was approached without any real or high expectations. My observation is that he presided wonderfully at all of our Liturgies around the Feast and those through New Years and the Sunday after. There continues to be the noticed carefulness with which he presides and preaches. All is consciously done and I observe in informal conversation with him the planning he does for these and all homilies.
- * I am also aware in casual conversations his communication that continues with St. Lukes.
- * I always go back to the HALT acronym from his contract. I have not noticed that hunger, anger, loneliness or tiredness have been visible in Jack. These would be clear signs that I would ask to converse about were I to observe them.

SIGNED:

DATE:

Jan. 8, 1999



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: February 1, 1999

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack's growing comfortableness with expectations about his ministry here at the Heights, and making adjustments with the appropriate person about that.
- * Also his growing comfortableness making TIME choices, priority choices, again keeping the appropriate person informed, but not worrying about whether or not that is understood by others.
- * Learning to balance individual demands of our Sisters in the Healthcare, as well as finding it important to set boundaries of time with some of those individuals.
- * Jack, as chaplain was glad to welcome Bishop Harrington and orient him to presiding at our Eucharistic Celebration.
- * Jack and we as a congregation are preparing for and determining his involvement in our Chapter in July. His desire is to know more and more about us, and the history from which we have come.
- * Jack is more and more comfortable being the only man among women in his life with us! He is able to acknowledge that how he processes information is different and he is fine with that, and even fine with saying that now! He is more comfortable expediting from his perspective as a man and as a priest.
- * He continues to need to balance what is from a contemporary or a more traditional spirituality, within himself and our Sisters.
- * I observe his increased engagement in what is part of our planning for the liturgical seasons, such as Lent coming up. He is able to add to the planning because of how he is coming to know our Sisters. There is a delightful blend of perspectives: sometimes for his own personal experiences, and at other times from the experiences of our Sisters. He is also very willing to make real what are the planned ideas, through his homilies and conversations with individuals.

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

JK

- * About the other parts of the contract and budding signs, I continue to observe that he is faithful about visits with his counselor, his support group, and his commitment to the 12-steps. I know this, not because I ask but because I hear it from him in casual conversation.
- * I am aware that he is doing what he needs to do to maintain good physical health, right now that being physical exercise.
- * Again in casual conversation I hear him speak about being in touch with the professionals at St. Luke's. I presume this is part of his on-going self care.
- * In so many ways I find him open and very honest about how life is at the moment, and what to do about that if there are concerns.

SIGNED:

DATE:



Feb 2, 1999

JK000142

JK

PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Pastoral Center —
55 West Sanborn
17 February 1999

Office of the Chancellor

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

Reverend Jack Krough
Assisi Heights
Rochester, MN 55904

Dear Father Krough,

Bishop Harrington asked me to review with you his particular determinations regarding the scope of your ministry at Assisi Heights and in general:

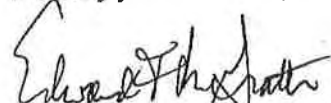
- ▶ 1) The faculties you have limit your celebration of the Eucharist and other sacraments to the chapels at Assisi Heights, and within the scope of your military duties;
- ▶ 2) Specifically your faculty to hear confessions is restricted to Assisi Heights and you are not to hear the confessions of minors;
- ▶ 3) The Bishop does not want you to exercise public ministry, such as weekend substitution, concelebration at a funeral, and participation in a communal penance service, but you may concelebrate at priests' retreats and at private priests' conferences, such as at Clergy Days in Okoboji;
- ▶ 4) Bishop Harrington was very specific in wanting to reinforce that you are not to be alone with a minor or minors on any occasion, including the military.

In addition, Father Hoepfner wanted me to visit with you about you commitment to the National Guard, which we will do in our meeting on Thursday 18 February.

I don't think there is anything new in Bishop Harrington's review of your faculties, but at the beginning of his ministry he felt that it would be wise to formally review this with you and set it down in writing. The Bishop will be happy to visit with you when he has received the report following your aftercare.

With prayerful best wishes, I am

Sincerely yours in Christ,



Reverend Edward F. McGrath
Chancellor

cc: Fr. Michael Hoepfner ✓

JK000358

JK

DIOCESE OF WINONA
55 WEST SANBORN
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987

Office of the
Vicar General

PO Box 588
Tel. 507/454-4643

MEMO

TO: Father Ed McGrath
FROM: Father Michael Hoepfner ^{AK}
DATE: March 17, 1999
RE:

I concur with your thought that it would be good for
continue reporting every month until Father Krough has been at that position for one year. Please
convey this to Sister. Thank you.

JK000143



Sisters of Saint Francis


Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: April 9, 1999

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * These weeks of Lent, Holy Week and Easter have been more demanding for Jack, however, he served us and himself well. He claims tiredness from it, yet also assures me that he continued what is his program of self care.
- * Jack was very present not only to the services of this time but also to the planning of each of these services including a communal celebration of the Sacrament of Reconciliation.
- * Jack could positively speak of the meaningfulness of all these liturgical celebrations, not only for us at Assisi Heights, but for himself. I saw that was true as I continue to see it in the carefulness with which he presides. There is a consciousness that bespeaks a focused attention. It is never hurried or fragmented.
- * He is now preparing to give a two day retreat to our most elderly and health-fragile Sisters, and he seems enthused about doing that by way of letting the time and presentations be filled with hope.
- * In coming to the close of Jack's first year with us, he has only positive things to say about that: the welcome, the gratitude, the affirmation, the participation in our Franciscan life and the participation in the lives of our Sisters. I can only say that my observation of him is one of great comfortableness with us, and the ability to meet us where we are, speak that to persons and to the community, and be well received.
- * He continues his program and is up-front with me as to how that is helpful as he continues his ministry with us here at Assisi Heights. I trust him and am graced to be walking with him as he continues his faithfulness to his recovery program.

SIGNED:



DATE: April 9, 1999

"We desire the Spirit of God at work in all of us."



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

April 12, 1999

Easter Blessings, Ed,

This is late because the wondrous Paschal Event
of Jesus kept us mysteriously involved! all
went very well, only we were very tired. So, the
delay!

Thanks,

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*



Sisters of Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From
Re: Monthly Report
Date: May 9, 1999

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

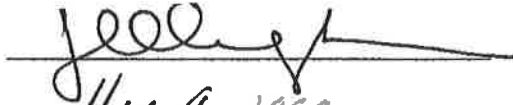
- * Jack completed the retreat for our Sisters in health care and while that was added stress coming right on the heels of Holy Week and Easter there was careful preparation and from all reports it went very well. In the midst of these added responsibilities that require much preparation Jack balances it with even more carefulness to his program as well as letting go of some of the other pastoral care temporarily.
- * From the above, I want to indicate that Jack is careful about the hours he is committed to each week, and keeps the Director of the Assisi Heights community informed of changes that have to be made to keep him faithful to those hours.
- * Having completed what was additional commitments, Jack is now back to the more routine ministries, but they are not done routinely. He is available to the Sisters, and is very present to them. This availability is sometimes by appointment, and more often simply at a request on the spot which as I observe or hear him speak he is patient with---for himself and the Sister.
- * In speaking about how the ministry is managed, beyond what I see, Jack is very honest in saying that when the need arises, he does what he needs to do by way of diffusing the tension. This is done by speaking of it up front with his therapist, support group and/or his spiritual director. These are the constants by way of support and there is a regularity about meeting with all of these groups as well as availability of any of them as needed.
- * My ongoing question about the ministry and its effect is to speak about the HALT items, that is the hunger, anger, loneliness, and tiredness. His response and my observation is that Jack is very aware of the reality of these, and is attentive to caring for any one or all of them daily as he lives out his program. His presence and actions confirm that for me.
- * Jack is awaiting the Chapter meeting scheduled for this summer and has committed himself to be a part of that so as to get a picture of the whole of us. In that regard also, Jack becomes more and more imbued with what is our Franciscan heritage and eagerly learns and appreciates where

JK

our spirituality is rooted and its place in the Church today as well as its very Gospel rootedness. His homilies display that.

* More than that and I keep saying this because it is such a confirmation for me and the commitment I have in this process: all his homilies, as well as his actions as a presider speak of careful and deliberate attention.

Signed:

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to be "Joe" followed by a stylized flourish, written over a horizontal line.

Date:

A handwritten date "May 9, 1999" in black ink, written over a horizontal line.

JK000150

JK

Rec'd
4 June 99
JK



**Sisters of
Saint Francis**

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: June 1, 1999

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS--CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack continues with the agreed upon hours of ministry, and of course, as he gets to know the Sisters better and they he those hours in Pastoral Care go by quickly and there is always more that could be done, but he is careful about keeping to the specified hours.
- * Jack has committed himself to be part of our Chapter meetings which occur at the end of this month. He has great curiosity about that as well as a bit of apprehension being new to many of the Sisters present.
- * Jack continues to be present at Worship Committee meetings and is very participative. Last week there was great discussion as we looked back over the year liturgically.
- * For the communal sacramental celebrations, Jack is careful by way of preparation and is very sensitive to the needs of the Sisters receiving the sacrament--in this case it was the Sacrament of Anointing. That is very much appreciated by all present.
- * Jack continues to tell me he is faithful to therapy, his twelve-step group, his sponsor and Spiritual Direction.
- * I observe no behavior that would lead me to doubt that. What continues is the intentionality with which he performs his ministry especially that of presiding at Eucharist which is where I experience him more regularly and that also leads me to believe he is observing a program faithfully.

Signed:

Date: June 2, 1999

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

JK000151

JK



**Sisters of
Saint Francis**

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: July 9, 1999

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS--CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack met the 'whole family' so to speak by participating fully in our Chapter. I observed he was actively doing so, holding his own and confidently speaking his truth in the midst of what sometimes were differing views. It was worth it for him and us, even though there was stress involved for him as well as us. He coped well and continues to process it all.
- * Jack's ministry continues to go well. I observe greater and greater comfortableness and trust on the part of our Sisters and him. My observations are very positive. He continues to be faithful to the contracted hours per week.
- * Jack continues to be faithful to the contract: counselor, spiritual direction, support group, and areas of exercise for self care.
- * Again (as always!), the most observable signs of fidelity to his contract is the manner in which he presides at Eucharist: such focused attention, deliberateness and lack of hurriedness. This is evidence for me as supervisor that contracted commitments are being practiced.

Signed: _____

Date: July 16, 1999

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

JK000152

grooming & manipulation elevates the youth to the same status

"I have these problems: can I talk to you; I have no one to talk to"

Depression, object lovelessness,

Sexualizing false intimacy

particularly with because of the psychological manipulations

Unhealthy, openness.

49

Survivors of

Warrior wounds of W-F-T yr alcohol & drugs have suffered brain damage, physical, dental problems

Crack reduced to 1X week

Soldier for family - now reaching out

Request -

Needs dental work

\$ 10,000

Diocese of Winona
Inter-Office Transmittal

TO: File JK
FR: Fr Mc G.
DATE: 27 11 99

- For Your Information
- For Your File
- For Your Approval
- For Your Review and comment
- Please Circulate
- Please Return
- Please Take Action
- Please Advise

Dr Walter Bera
update for approval.

Continued to improve, slow & steady pace: Bera was able to get in home social worker to help w/ motivation w/ teeth just must be stabilized medically
Re cleaning life
1X per week vs to 2 with w/ her

JK

DIOC
PO BOX 588
WINONA, MINNESOTA 55987-0588

Pastoral Center --
55 West Sanborn

Office of the Tribunal

Tel: 507/454-4643
Fax: 507/454-8106

MEMORANDUM

To: File
From: Fr. Edward McGrath *EM*
Re: Meeting notes
Date: 3 August 1999

On Friday 31 July 1998 I met with _____ and Fr. Jack Krough at 1:00 p.m.
in the chaplain's office sitting room.

_____ is the person designated by _____ as Fr. Krough's supervisor for the
purpose of reporting and accountability.

My purpose in requesting the meeting was to formalize reporting procedures for the supervisor so
the Diocese could continue to exercise its responsibility for supervision.

The conclusions we reached are that _____
will compose a report of her supervision once a month and forward
that report to the person in charge of implementation of the diocesan policy regarding sexual
matters, for which I am currently responsible.

The report is to be concrete.
The report will concern matters of the contract and "budding signs".
While the report may touch on matters emotional, the supervisor is not considered
a counselor and is not expected to provide counseling.
The report is to be signed by both.

The process of supervision and reporting will be reviewed in six months, in January or February
of 1999.

cc: Fr. Jack Krough

JK000154



**Sisters of
Saint Francis**

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From: _____
Re: Monthly Report
Date: August 13, 1999

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * He held out for the whole of Chapter which finished at the beginning July, participated fully, meaning he was comfortable agreeing, disagreeing, challenging, affirming etc...!
- * Having been away for a time, we were all glad to see him back---that says something about our gratitude for his ministry and it speaks to me the wonderful mutuality in that---both the holy and humorous exchanges!
- * Jack is more and more confident and clear in saying 'yes' when he means 'yes' and 'no' when he means 'no'. I find it growthful to observe that.
- * For the rest of this time, there is the consistent fidelity to what his contract contains. I can only say that I observe the fruits of that by his way of being with us casually, more formally and surely at Eucharist. That was one of the ways he was missed while away---his homilies!

Signed: _____

Date: August 17, 1999

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

Rev. Ed McGrath
Vicar Judicial--Diocese of Winona
Pastoral Center---Box 588
Winona, MN 55987-0588

September 11, 1999

Dear Ed,

I want to recall a request made to you some months ago about filing this report less frequently. At that time you indicated that your desire was that this continue until a year had passed. That has now happened, Ed, and I see no need for this to continue monthly.

I will act on the presumption of what was contained in your letter at the time of the previous request. Unless I hear otherwise, the next report will come to in early November and will be the observations for the months of September and October.

I am trusting myself and Jack in this regard, knowing that it can change whenever such a change is called for.

Thanks and blessed days of Autumn!



Sisters of Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: September 11, 1999

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack continues to be honest about working his program successfully and receiving affirmation to that effect, so what is experienced is confirmed. My observation is the same: there is attention, engagement, conscious involvement with persons to whom he ministers. The prime example this month is his being involved in workshops preparing all those who are Liturgical ministers. While he did this and did it well a year ago, there is a more 'at homeness' about this service this year. He is more relaxed, more confident in the doing, and there is the same on the part of our sisters---there is mutual trust and enjoyment.
- * I observe and hear Jack speak about healthy patterns in his life: watching the level of intensity it is wise for him to have as regards ministry and the persons to whom he ministers; there is a sense of detachment where such is called for and indeed demanded for the health his contract calls for and requires. He knows when to pull back and yet, when with confidence his own integrity calls for him to hold to a position of personal value.
- * Along this same line of thinking, Jack continues to reflect on the experience of our Chapter. Not only did he observe what challenges us as a congregation, but for him he was and is now challenged to trust his own experience and spirituality in the midst of our diversity.
- * Finally, from all the above I observe and know there is a peacefulness in Jack, that he enjoys his ministry more and more, and that there is no no lack of engagement. He is fully and consciously present!

Signed: _

Date: Sept 13, 1999

"We desire the Spirit of God at work in all of us."

JK



Saint Luke Institute

October 1, 1999

CONFIDENTIAL

Reverend Michael Hoepfner, Chancellor
Diocese of Winona
P.O. Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

RE: Reverend Jack Krough
SLI #13560

Dear Father Hoepfner:

Father Krough attended a workshop with us the week of August 30-September 3, 1999 as a part of his continuing care program. The following is our assessment of his progress in recovery over the last six months, based on an August 31, 1999 structured interview, collateral letters received from his support network, and his participation in workshop group sessions.

1. Recovery Program: This was Father Krough's third continuing care workshop. He reports faithful attendance at a bi-weekly SLAA meeting in the Twin Cities, and monthly meetings of the priests' general 12-step fellowship and a celibacy support group, a combination that works out to one meeting a week. He reports seeing his sponsor at the bi-weekly meetings and keeping telephone contact on alternate weeks.

Father Krough reports continued intensive spiritual work with his spiritual director. Father Krough's renewed spiritual life has been a particularly strong component of his recovery. His work with the Franciscan sister has been doubly enriching as it enhances his ministry at Assisi while focusing his own spiritual journey.

Father Krough's support group has met faithfully every two months. They have agreed to extend the time between meetings to three months. In between, Father Krough has developed the very useful habit of seeking support and of being accountable by sending frequent e-mail updates to his support group and his continuing care therapist. He sees most of his team socially on a weekly basis. Collateral letters from the team reflect his continued dedication to his recovery. One member observed that Father is more interested in people and less focused on himself; another reported that Father is expanding his interests without losing sight of his goals.

His therapist reports his belief that Father's recovery is deepening and becoming more meaningful. He noted that he continues to focus on stabilizing himself and opening himself up to others while also reflecting on, and trusting himself. Father reports that they are meeting every two months, and are currently working toward termination. . will, of course, be available to him on an "as needed" basis following formal termination of regularly scheduled sessions.

Father Krough again made good use of the workshop opportunities for self-assessment and accountability. He was particularly happy to report that he is managing his spending addiction with increasing success. His car is now paid for, and his federal income taxes are paid up.

2. Current Living Experience/Vocational Functioning: The administrator overseeing Father Krough's work at Assisi Heights again praised his work with the community, commending his preparation for whatever ministry is called for, and his availability and his obvious enjoyment in serving the individual and collective spiritual needs of the Sisters. She notes that he is faithful to his contract and does what he needs to do to maintain healthy relationships to God, self, and others.

The pastor where Father Krough is in residence reports that they continue to enjoy an easy fraternity, with the mutual bond of prayer, contemplation, and service. He notes that Father Krough is also well thought of by his parish staff in their limited amount of time with him.

Father Krough again set a goal at this workshop to continue working on normalizing relations with his family. Since returning home, he reported that his father was seriously injured when hit by a car, and Father Krough has been dealing with the family crisis, bringing him in closer proximity than he has been in his adult life. Apparently he has surprised himself at how well he has been able to manage the many issues, feelings, and personalities involved. Clearly, when necessity forced the issue, he was able to put his new skills into practice very effectively.

3. Medical: During the course of the workshop we monitor physical health via various laboratory indices. Father's test results showed a sharp rise in his triglycerides and overall cholesterol over last time, indicating a need for closer attention to limiting dietary fat. Otherwise, his weight has remained the same, and he is following an excellent fitness regimen. He had an individual consult with our nutritionist to get his food plan back on track.

4. Recommendations and Treatment Plan: Father Krough is to be commended for maintaining a healthy enthusiasm for his recovery work. Our observation of him this week is in concert with the reports from his support network and those with whom he lives and works. We endorse his working toward termination of regular therapy sessions, retaining the option of renewing this contact with his therapist in times of crisis, which may be the case with his father's current condition. His support group is obviously a major source of support and feedback for Father, and we trust their judgment that quarterly meetings of the entire group are sufficient at this point, since they are all in frequent contact informally. We encourage him to continue his current schedule of 12-step work and other group support meetings.

JK

Reverend Michael Hoepfner
Re: Reverend Jack Krough - SLI #13560

October 1, 1999
Page 3

It is a pleasure to work with Father Krough, and we look forward to seeing him again at his next scheduled workshop the week of February 28-March 4, 2000.


A copy of this letter is being sent Father Krough for his record, and to share with his support network for their observations on the workshop week. We are grateful for the many letters we received from his support network which informed this evaluation. If you have any questions regarding this report, please contact us.

We thank you for your continued support of Father Krough's recovery program, Father Hoepfner. Our prayers are with you always, and we ask, in turn, that you remember us to the Lord for continued blessings on the work of the Institute.


Sincerely,



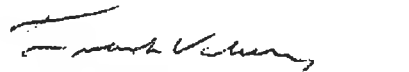
Catherine Turner, MSW, LCSW-C
Psychotherapist



Reverend Kenneth Phillips, TOR, MS, NCC
Coordinator, Continuing Care Services



Stephen Montana, PhD
Director of Clinical Services



Frank Valcour, MD
Medical Director and
Vice President for Clinical Services

CT/ct-lc
cc: Reverend Jack Krough

JK000160



JK

Office of the Chancellor

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PASTORAL CENTER

To: File
From: Fr. McGrath *EM*
Date: 1 November 1999
Re: Accountability session with Fr. Krough

I met with Fr. Krough at St. Pius X Rectory 26 October 1999 for the purpose of monitoring his recovery.

To the question, how is your recovery? he responded, "Good". He was at St. Luke's in September and is scheduled for another follow-up in March 2000. He said he was working on family of origin issues.

Circumstances significantly affected his dealing with family of origin issues: his father had an accident and was hospitalized at St. Mary's Rochester for a period of time, during which Jack saw him daily. In response to the stress of dealing with the aftermath of his father's accident he said that he has gained confidence in his recovery.

I asked what does he need to do to stay healthy. He pointed out that he increases his attendance at SLA meetings, stays close to his sponsor, and meets with the priests' 12 step recovery support group. He finds living with Fr. Paul Surprenaunt a positive aspect of recovery; he is 'ok' sharing with Paul. He remains faithful to his exercise program to keep depression away. He increases time in meditation, and during the time of his father's recuperation he called St. Luke's twice. He said his challenge is to "feel the feelings and trust you will move through them".

Jack reported that his last meeting with _____ would be in November. I see no reason to continue those therapy sessions.

I asked about the work at Assisi Heights and _____ monitoring. He noted at my prompting that _____ likes to keep track of Jack's 'budding signs', and especially his contract. He pointed out that he has been assertive in keeping boundaries. He has not accepted the request of a woman from St. Pius, who regularly attends Mass at Assisi Heights, to become more deeply involved in her RCIA process. In my opinion, this is quite appropriate.

Jack and I spoke at some length and bantered about the tensions and difficulties of serving a community of religious women. I passed on to him the compliment of _____ regarding his previous Sunday homily. Jack noted that he has minimal contact with the congregational administration.

With regard to the HALT checking (hungry, angry, lonely and tired), Jack noted that in his phase of recovery he is no longer dealing with the intensity as followed the intervention and treatment. He has the challenge of being tired of the self-absorption of therapy. I specifically asked him if he had been acting out. This he denied. I specifically asked him if he had any involvement in internet activity - pornography sites, chat rooms and the like. This he denied. I note that Jack is among all our priests the most computer literate.

We spoke of his relationship with the presbyterate. It is positive and growing. He finds a lot of support from the priests' support group. He continues to confront shame issues. There are a few priests who will have nothing to do with him. He noted positively regarding the Clergy Days at Okoboji that he did not get sick. Sick in the sense of avoidance behavior, I gather from the context of the conversation.

55 West Sanborn Street ■ PO Box 588 ■ Winona, MN 55987
Telephone: 507/454-4643 ■ Fax: 507/454-8106 ■ E-mail: emcgrath@dow.org

JK000161

JK

I asked if there was anything he needed from the Diocese of Winona. He responded that he has a hope that at some point, or a dream at some point, that he would be welcome at diocesan events as a concelebrant. He readily acknowledged that he understands the restrictions on his faculties. I spoke briefly of his victims' counselor's desire to be involved in on going therapy for the benefit of both parties.


With regard to my previous concern about the relationship with _____ in light of his status as a resigned priest who has publicly entered into a "marriage" with another man, Jack said that he processed that at St. Luke's with his counselor. He indicated to me a more general understanding of the Diocese's position, particularly after speaking with _____, I did not note which one. Jack noted that his is not using _____ massage therapy services as much as in the past, and has begun to use a masseuse who specializes in a Chinese method. But again, the therapy is less frequent than in the past. When he is at St. Luke's he makes use of the massage therapist available there.

I asked Jack about his spending. He said he is feeling good; he now owns his own car. He has balance and thinks critically before purchasing. Spending is now one of his barometers.

In the area of spirituality there has been a significant new development. He regularly attends the Shambala (spelling?) Center in the Twin Cities area. There is practiced a meditation discipline from the Tibetan Buddhist tradition. It has both a Buddhist and a secular expression. It is structured around a 1-hour set, a break, then a discussion group. The attendees are aware of his status as a priest, which many find more than a little curious since many are baptized, but non-practicing or apostate Roman Catholics.

I asked about chemical use and Jack reported moderate use of nicotine, caffeine, and alcohol.

Our conversation ended at 4:30 p.m., followed by a brief social visit with the parish priest.

P2 1 x 1 99 

JK000162



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

*"We desire the
spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Monthly Report
Date: November 2, 1999

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Within the past weeks Jack has been dealing with family issues precipitated by his father's accident which involved several hospitalizations and the long term healing that this will take. One can expect this would raise the HALT (hungry, angry, lonely tired) levels. Jack deals with these feelings by increasing 12-step meetings, being in touch with St. Luke's personnel, and has found that in ministry he has spent more time with specific Sisters who are good for his soul. He found he was able to successfully continue to do self assessment of skills learned in treatment, and practice them appropriately. Increased prayer, meditation and meeting with his support group affirmed the fact that he was doing none of this alone.
- * With his Assisi Heights ministry, Jack continues to set and act out of appropriate boundaries. He is more firm when saying "no", and challenging persons to trust his reasons for doing so without needing to give explanations when to do so would not be appropriate.
- * With deep respect for the depression that he can experience, in its present cycle he knows himself to be more energized, without looking for anything more---only the present moment.
- * My observation, which is most continuous around his participation in the Sacramental life here at the Heights and the planning of that, I find him attentive, prepared, and faithful to the celebration of each. He gives and receives deserved affirmation in healthy ways. I affirm him in his on-going growth!

Signed:

Date: November 3, 1999



Sisters of Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Two-month Report
Date: January 8, 2000

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * In these past two months Jack continues to be involved with family, in that his father is still into healing from his accident. It means trips to Rochester and back. Jack is available for this service as well as being present to his mother. Of course that happening during holiday time presents added stress. I can only say that in conversation with me, Jack is making healthy choices according to his recovery program. We speak about it when he initiates it, and that plus his support group, twelve-step group and his spiritual direction gives him opportunity to continue to process the effect of all this in his life and recovery.
- * Jack's presence through all the 'extras' of Christmas and New Years has been very focused and very well prepared. That, too, was not without its stresses, for us as well as for him. He needed to prioritize time and energy and did so appropriately in my opinion. That may have meant that some persons to whom he ministered could not be seen as quickly as they might have liked. So, Jack learns to live with knowing not everyone likes his choices, but he makes them responsibly, trying to be faithful to the hours of ministry for which his contract calls.
- * Boundaries are becoming more clearly and confidently identified, kept and become the content for personal reflection and shared appropriately with the groups mentioned above. I appreciate the approach to me when to him it is important to speak about matters that he can talk out and thus know himself confidently moving forward in the recovery program.
- * This same kind of confidence is witnessed by me as regards the depression. Jack indicates that it is present mildly, and that he is managing it appropriately.
- * A learning from the energy that the holidays took, and his not being physically well this week into the new year, is reminding him that next year he needs a break after those days. I support that.
- * All-in-all, I can say that from my observations and conversations with Jack during these two months, he is faithful to his contract and I observe nothing that would cause me concern about the Budding Signs.



JK

Office of the Chancellor

DIocese OF WINONA
PASTORAL CENTER

7 February 2000

Reverend Jack Krough
Assisi Heights
1001 14th St. NW
Rochester, MN 55901

Dear Jack,

I have been in contact with St. Luke's regarding my own skills as a supervisor for those in recovery. It was suggested to me that I have a release from you to with regard to your treatment and follow-up plans.

Please complete the form on the bottom of this letter and return it to me as soon as possible. You can enclose the response in another envelope and mark it "Personal and Confidential", if you wish.

If you have any questions, give me a ring.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

Reverend Edward F. McGrath

I hereby authorize the Saint Luke Institute, 8901 Hampshire Ave., Silver Spring, MD 20903, to furnish information requested to Fr. Edward F. McGrath, of the Diocese of Winona. The information requested may include, but is not limited to, treatment notes, psychological tests, discharge summary and contract, and progress notes. The purpose for which this information is sought is to facilitate ongoing supervision by the Diocese of Winona.

I understand that Fr. McGrath is bound by the expectations of professional confidentiality. I understand that I may revoke this authorization at any time. This authorization will expire 1 March 2001 and must be renewed.

Signature _____ Please print your name: _____

Date _____

Date of Birth _____

55 West Sanborn Street ■ PO Box 588 ■ Winona, MN 55987
Telephone: 507/454-4643 ■ Fax: 507/454-8106 ■ E-mail: emcgrath@dow.org

JK000165

JK **REINHARDT & ANDERSON**

Attorneys at Law

E-1000 First National Bank Building
332 Minnesota Street, Saint Paul, Minnesota 55101
Office: 651/227-9990 Fax: 651/297-6543
www.ralawfirm.com

Jeffrey R. Anderson*†
Mark Reinhardt**
Mark A. Wendorf
Joanne Jirik Mullen
Harvey H. Eckart
Barbara J. Felt

Garrett D. Blanchfield
Marcia L. Ford
Frances E. Baillon
Jodean A. Thronson
Paul A. Bolin

February 17, 2000

FEB 19 2000

George F. Restovich, Esq.
Suite 15, Riverside Building
400 South Broadway
Rochester, MN 55904

Re: v. Father Jack Krough, Diocese of Winona

Dear Mr. Restovich:

Over a year ago I approached you confidentially in an attempt to reach a resolution of claims between Father Krough and the Diocese. I had called you at that time instead of writing or initiating suit because [redacted] had approached and asked me to attempt to negotiate a resolution simply, privately and quickly. At that time the Diocese had been helping him with the counseling and he was interested in trying to close this chapter in his life and move forward. At that time I offered to settle and fully resolve the matter. You indicated you would communicate our offer and respond to it. I never received a response and did try to reach you a number of times and not long ago was able to speak with you about this. At that time, you indicated that the Diocese was unhappy that [redacted] had contacted me and were not interested in responding to the demand but would be interested in finding out how much psychotherapy and/or counseling is necessitated. I asked his counselor, Walter Bera, to provide me information about that. Enclosed is a brief narrative from Walter Bera outlining the expected need and cost for future psychotherapeutic care.

I would ask that you review this matter and that the Diocese respond to our demand within two weeks so we can either close this matter amicably or explore whatever other options are available.

Very truly yours,



Jeffrey R. Anderson
j.r.anderson@ralawfirm.com

JRA/tg
Encl.

A Partnership of Professional Corporations.

*Also admitted in Wisconsin

**Also admitted in Washington, D.C.

†Diplomate, National Board of Civil Trial Advocacy

JK000010



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Two-month Report
Date: March 10, 2000

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack is recently back from St. Luke's, and found that experience affirming and reassuring. His sharing with the Assisi Heights community was that he was going to a workshop, and in that was being careful of boundary issues, which is a practice of which he is more and more careful, and growing in that. He was enthused about going and returned with that enthusiasm confirmed.
- * In these past two months, Jack describes himself as being centered and balanced in the midst of routine, without wanting it any other way. There is routine with which he is fine --- enjoying the ordinary.
- * Part of that ordinary is the conscious and faithful participation in Spiritual Direction, his support group as well as the 12-step groups to which he is faithfully committed.
- * He shares that he is ever alert to the HALT acronym, and feels able to address the warning of any of those feelings and do so honestly through his prayer, reflection, meditation exercises and physical exercise
- * I observe Jack's success in all the above by way of his attention to and responsibility for his activities at the Heights and to the service to our Sisters. He is missed when gone, and that is a positive sign for me.
- * He was greatly involved in our preparations for Lent, and has begun the making real of all that in just these few days beginning with Ash Wednesday's day of reflection for us.
- * In that same vein he is doing some other Lenten programs and finds that challenging but enjoyable and grace filled for himself and is told how helpful it is to others. I try to observe the mutuality in that, and I see it and experience it myself.
- * All in all I observe a continued growthful and healthy two months for Jack. And that seems to have been confirmed by his recent time at St. Luke's.

JK

* Even as I have indicated about the 'routine' in Jack's life in ministry in the past two months, I know that is quickly changing because of Lent and the coming of Holy Week. There will be challenges and demands, but I believe Jack will make choices for what serve health of mind/ body/ spirit. I laud the consistency of his efforts.

Signed:

Date:

March 13, 2012

JK000167



Office of the Chancellor

DIocese OF WINONA
PASTORAL CENTER

To: Bishop Harrington
From: Fr. McGrath
Date: 26 April 2000
Re: laicization

As you requested, I spoke with Fr. Jack Krough about approaching with a request that he considers petitioning for laicization. Fr. Krough volunteered to test the waters with _____, and I agreed that he should, pointing out that all we would need is a brief letter in his own hand to the Holy Father asking for a return to the lay state with dispensation from all obligations of the clerical state, including clerical celibacy.

Fr. Krough called today to inform me that he had indeed visited with _____ and he is not opposed to the idea. _____ however, would like to visit with you personally before he makes a decision. His telephone number is _____ and I suspect that the visit could be either in your office or in Rochester.

My opinion: I would suggest that you meet with him. With your kind and firm manner, I suspect that you will be able to help him approach the Holy Father. You might even plant the seed for a minor miracle – a return to the faith.

If you inspect the material that we have on file on _____, it is clear that this is a man we do not want in active ministry not simply because of his current life style. It is a wonder he was ordained.

55 West Sanborn Street ■ PO Box 588 ■ Winona, MN 55987
Telephone: 507/454-4643 ■ Fax: 507/454-8106 ■ E-mail: emcgrath@dow.org

JK000365

JK



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights

~~Box 4900~~ 1001 14th St. N.W.

Rochester, MN 55908

Tel: 507/282-7441

Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From
Re: Two-month Report
Date: May 4, 2000

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack's focus continues to be his spiritual life and in the last two months that has had even greater emphasis with his meeting of who was present in May at Assisi Heights for an evening presentation. Jack has found a spiritual friend, who is supportive, and enriching. They continue to be in contact and Jack hopes to go spend time with him later this year.
- * Another support of Jack's spiritual life and this encouraged by is the reading that has become very enriching for Jack; that of the Patristics --- in the early church. He is faithful to that kind of spiritual reading and appropriation.
- * The above supports the ongoing way that Jack continues to minister to us at Assisi Heights. He was away for annual training and was missed by all the Sisters and those who usually worship at Assisi Heights.
- * There continues to be intentionality and preparedness as he celebrates with us Sacramentally and enters into our celebrations of Jubilee, the closure of our present leadership and the welcoming of our new leadership.
- * In all of that he identifies himself growing stronger in what he is able to do competently, as well as what he would choose not to do. His saying 'yes' or 'no' comes from a place of confidence, knowing his areas of expertise, and where there is not that expertise.
- * All the above is supported by what is practiced in his contract: support groups, twelve step groups, spiritual direction, contact with St. Luke's when desired or needed, and having before him always the reminder of HALT, and the cautions around that.

Signed:

Date:

June 30, 2000

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

JK000171



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From: "
Re: Two-month Report
Date: May 4, 2000

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS--CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * The Lenten season went well for Jack and for us. Jack also did some other programs and day-long retreats which went well for him and the participants.
- * Doing a program at our retreat center near Janesville, Mn. allowed Jack an opportunity to spend two days in a hermitage there. That was enriching for him, spiritually, physically and emotionally.
- * In learning from the past, Holy Week was powerful for him and again for us at Assisi Heights. Some things became more meaningful because of simplifying rituals, and other things were prioritized, meaning some were let go from the ordinary routine of his ministry.
- * Triduum Days were very Spirit-filled; done with such intention, reflection and homilies which Jack does so well---preaching out of his own experience, thus allowing us the assembly to do the same. Truly we walked "...in the footprints of Jesus", which was our Lenten theme, and continues to be our Easter theme.
- * Jack's focus has been his Spiritual life---continuation of the practice of Centering Prayer, which aids this focus.
- * In light of the above, he and we are looking forward to an evening with Basil Pennington o.s.c.o. on May 10, on the very topic and practice of Centering Prayer.
- * Jack continues to be faithful to the spiritual direction, support group and twelve-step group, to which is committed.
- * Jack also is always aware of the cautionary HALT reminders, especially the 'tired' piece. He was watchful of that during this not only busy time, but the intensity of the busyness. He responds appropriately when aware of the tiredness.

JK

* He continues to be really present as he responds to us not only as
Presider at Eucharist, but whenever he is extending Sacraments. He
is always prepared and does not merely go through the motions, but
is truly engaged and involved with the Sisters he is coming to know
better and better.

Signed: _____

Date: May 4, 2008

JK000173

May 19, 2000

George F. Restovich
Bruce K. Piotrowski
Richard W. Kimlinger
Gary A. Gittus
Michael Spindler-Krage

Mr. Jeffrey R. Anderson
Attorney at Law
Reinhardt & Anderson
E-1000 First National Bank Building
332 Minnesota Street
St. Paul, Minnesota 55101

RE:

Dear Mr. Anderson:

I am responding to your last request that the Diocese of Winona pay the sum of \$40,000 to settle his claim, which you have referred to as a claim for future treatment expense.

The Diocese of Winona has never met with the circumstance presented in this case where a person whom the Diocese decided to assist with treatment expenses on a pastoral basis, now seeks to settle the claim for those future treatment expenses.

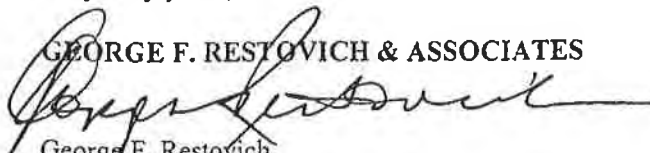
The Diocese of Winona has authorized me to offer two options: 1) The Diocese will continue to review request for therapy assistance on a six-month basis as it has in the past, and will decide, upon each review, whether to continue to pay his treatment expenses; or 2) The Diocese of Winona will pay him a lump sum payment of \$6,000.00, which we believe would pay him for therapy treatment for an additional three years at the level he presently is receiving treatment, subject to his signing a full, final and complete release of all claims against the Diocese of Winona.

The Diocese of Winona would offer only one comment to the letter from Dr. Walter Bera. The Diocese does not believe that needs treatment for the rest of his life. The Diocese has voluntarily chosen to assist in therapy treatment over the last approximately three years and believes that another three years is fair and reasonable.

Please advise.

Very truly yours,

GEORGE F. RESTOVICH & ASSOCIATES



George F. Restovich
GFR/dck

cc: Father Edward McGrath
Michael Saffel

JK



30 August 2000

Rev. Edward McGrath, Chancellor
Diocese of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Father McGrath

Thank you for your call yesterday. I look forward to visiting with you soon.

If it is agreeable, I would like to repay my loan with the diocese at a rate of \$200.00 a month. Either it can be subtracted from my salary or I can send a check each month, whichever method is easier for the Finance Office.

Thank you for all your help and encouragement.

Fraternally in Christ

Rev Jack L Krough

J. L. Krough

JK000359



30 August 2000

Rev. Edward McGrath, Chancellor
Diocese of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Father McGrath

Thank you for your call yesterday. I look forward to visiting with you soon.

If it is agreeable, I would like to repay my loan with the diocese at a rate of \$200.00 a month. Either it can be subtracted from my salary or I can send a check each month, whichever method is easier for the Finance Office.

Thank you for all your help and encouragement.

Fraternally in Christ

Rev Jack L. Krough

J L Krough

JK000367

JK



Sisters of
Saint Francis

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Two-month Report
Date: ~~May 4, 2000~~ Sept. 10, 2000

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * In July, new Leadership members were installed, as well as the closure with past leadership was experienced. Jack participated in this with ease and welcome, having met all these persons and been present for the Chapter of Elections in March.
- * Jack initiated an open and substantive discussion with our new Community Minister about his situation with us at Assisi heights.
- * Jack continues to be pleased with support offered him by the Leadership at Assisi Heights. There has been a change in this leadership so Jack is now accountable to another of the Sisters as regard his position description, and that change went smoothly for Jack. Also, we have a new Liturgist and that change also has been met with flexibility.
- * Within recent weeks Jack was back at St. Luke's. He states that was very positive and affirming for him.
- * Now that autumn is beginning, Jack has been having meetings and is making plans for Fall workshops. He finds this energizing and appreciates the creativity it provides him.
- * The routine and discipline of his contract and attention to the 'budding signs' are followed regularly: daily prayer, spiritual/professional reading, twelve-step program, priest's support group, spiritual direction etc...
- * Jack continues to be very present to our Sisters as he ministers here, is very intentional about presiding and preaching, and is mutually missed when not present for a week, as I have witnessed.

Signed

Date: Sept. 10, 2000

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

JK000177

JK



**Sisters of
Saint Francis**

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Two-month Report
Date: November 3, 2000

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS--CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * In this two month period, things continue to go well for Jack, keeping in mind that balance is important in his life. He continues to be aware of the tendency to over extend.
- * A new learning for him, and a first, is relating to the recently hired Assisi Heights Liturgist. This is sometimes a challenge and a growing edge for him.
- * There is also the insight of coming to know those with whom he works better, and those with whom there are challenges and difficulties in the areas of his ministry. Again, this is sometimes challenging, but the awareness forces him to look and learn about himself.
- * In the area of self care:
 - he is aware of HALT,
 - balancing desire against need,
 - consistent about 12-step program, support group, spiritual direction, daily spiritual practices, and relating to fellow alumni of St. Luke's.
- * He continues to be creative in his ministry, and appreciates his ability to be so, as we continue to appreciate it. One example of this was the shared ideas given at the recent planning for Advent here at Assisi Heights. There are many such examples.

Signed:

Date: 11/7/2000

*'We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us.'*

JK000178

JK

CONFIDENTIAL

Date: November 3, 2000
To: Rev. Ed McGrath, Chancellor
From: P.J. Thompson, Sexual Misconduct Team
Re: Meeting with JK, Wednesday - November 1, 2000

Goal:

The team visit was scheduled as a follow-up meeting to discuss the last report from St. Luke's Institute, recovery progress, and any issues or questions JK might have from the diocesan team representatives.

Reflections:

JK offered a copy of the most recent report from St. Luke's Institute and identified areas about which he felt most positive. He was thankful that the support team had recognized his continued efforts and feels comfortable and pleased with his progress. He articulated his recognition that struggles will continue to come daily, but his coping skills are stronger.

He offered personal reflections about his relationship with an author that has helped him grow as a person and feel secure in who he is. He also shared the sorrow felt about a friend from the treatment program who recently relapsed. It was indicated that this was a sign to him that he must always be aware of his own budding signs and must have a constant awareness of placing himself in healthy environments.

He did not feel that interaction with youth was a problem nor did the opportunity present itself. He clearly stated that this was not of interest to him and it would be more of a concern with the if there were to be issues. His current assignment allows for interaction and fellowship that he describes as "safe" and "protected". This has been a good match in terms of service and creating a place in which he can creatively minister with less vulnerability. As an observation, it would be appropriate to point out situations that could present the possibility of nurturing his addictions even in his current "safe" environment. This perception appears to be the reality now, but factors could change that and he must understand he could still be vulnerable.

I found him to be engaging openly in our conversation. He had a friendly attitude and direct eye-contact with me and Fr. Ed McGrath throughout the meeting.

I asked him to talk more about the idea of fear regarding negative emotions as expressed in the recent report. He gave several examples acknowledging his perfectionism and how it affects his behavior in all situations. JK discussed the use of the HALT review (Hungry, Angry, Lonely, Tired) when he saw signs of behaviors that were connected to his addictions. This is a

JK000179

JK

good check system for him. He says he knows that he avoids negative emotions and continues to try to keep a balance through coping mechanisms he learned in treatment. He was able to give several concrete examples of ways in which he deals with anger or frustration.

I addressed the change of administration at his current assignment. He stated that the administration has changed and the new people clearly approach things differently. This is an awareness at this point, but not a conflict. He seemed genuinely comfortable with his role and interactions with those who were in administration. He discussed his further comfort level with the idea that he recognizes he may not be there forever. He stated he believed that he would be placed where he was most needed. He also expressed appreciation for the support of the diocese in his intervention and treatment.

When describing needs or questions, he indicated that he felt he would like to have an opportunity to be a part of the Misconduct Team in the diocese. He felt his perspective in going through the process, knowing the steps of treatment and recovery, and caring about others that have gone through this cycle was important. He also said that increased communication with the "whole" team would be better. He mentioned that he understood the role the team members played in the process but felt it would have been better to have all members in on the process from the beginning. He was not uncomfortable with my service to the team but welcomed it. He understood the need to have a variety of perspectives to aid in the recovery process. During the meeting, both myself and Fr. McGrath talked about the importance to connect with the individual and not the paperwork alone. We closed by offering our services as contacts.

JK000180

CONFIDENTIAL

Date: November 3, 2000
To: Rev. Ed McGrath, Chancellor
From: P.J. Thompson, Sexual Misconduct Team
Re: Meeting with JK, Wednesday - November 1, 2000

Goal:

The team visit was scheduled as a follow-up meeting to discuss the last report from St. Luke's Institute, recovery progress, and any issues or questions JK might have from the diocesan team representatives.

Reflections:

JK offered a copy of the most recent report from St. Luke's Institute and identified areas about which he felt most positive. He was thankful that the support team had recognized his continued efforts and feels comfortable and pleased with his progress. He articulated his recognition that struggles will continue to come daily, but his coping skills are stronger.

He offered personal reflections about his relationship with an author that has helped him grow as a person and feel secure in who he is. He also shared the sorrow felt about a friend from the treatment program who recently relapsed. It was indicated that this was a sign to him that he must always be aware of his own budding signs and must have a constant awareness of placing himself in healthy environments.

He did not feel that interaction with youth was a problem nor did the opportunity present itself. He clearly stated that this was not of interest to him and it would be more of a concern with the group if there were to be issues. His current assignment allows for interaction and fellowship that he describes as "safe" and "protected". This has been a good match in terms of service and creating a place in which he can creatively minister with less vulnerability. As an observation, it would be appropriate to point out situations that could present the possibility of nurturing his addictions even in his current "safe" environment. This perception appears to be the reality now, but factors could change that and he must understand he could still be vulnerable.

I found him to be engaging openly in our conversation. He had a friendly attitude and direct eye-contact with me and Fr. Ed McGrath throughout the meeting.

I asked him to talk more about the idea of fear regarding negative emotions as expressed in the recent report. He gave several examples acknowledging his perfectionism and how it affects his behavior in all situations. JK discussed the use of the HALT review (Hungry, Angry, Lonely, Tired) when he saw signs of behaviors that were connected to his addictions. This is a

good check system for him. He says he knows that he avoids negative emotions and continues to try to keep a balance through coping mechanisms he learned in treatment. He was able to give several concrete examples of ways in which he deals with anger or frustration.

I addressed the change of administration at his current assignment. He stated that the administration has changed and the new people clearly approach things differently. This is an awareness at this point, but not a conflict. He seemed genuinely comfortable with his role and interactions with those who were in administration. He discussed his further comfort level with the idea that he recognizes he may not be there forever. He stated he believed that he would be placed where he was most needed. He also expressed appreciation for the support of the diocese in his intervention and treatment.

When describing needs or questions, he indicated that he felt he would like to have an opportunity to be a part of the Misconduct Team in the diocese. He felt his perspective in going through the process, knowing the steps of treatment and recovery, and caring about others that have gone through this cycle was important. He also said that increased communication with the "whole" team would be better. He mentioned that he understood the role the team members played in the process but felt it would have been better to have all members in on the process from the beginning. He was not uncomfortable with my service to the team but welcomed it. He understood the need to have a variety of perspectives to aid in the recovery process. During the meeting, both myself and Fr. McGrath talked about the importance to connect with the individual and not the paperwork alone. We closed by offering our services as contacts.

JK



**Sisters of
Saint Francis**

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From
Re: Two-month Report
Date: January 4, 2001

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS—CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Advent and Christmas went well, though they took a lot of energy because of how the feasts fell right after the weekend.
- * Jack continues to learn the importance of intentionality around relationship boundaries. There is a professionalism and discipline in doing this consistently. This is a practiced value for him.
- * Depression is managed though Jack is more aware of it during this season of less sunlight and longer periods of darkness.
- * There is fidelity to ongoing practices of what his contract asks of him: support group, spiritual direction, daily times for meditation and spiritual reading etc . . . These provide more and more awareness of integration in the whole / wholeness of his life!
- * There is consciousness of the HALT items in his life, though they become more opportunities of curiosity as to where they are coming from and what is there to learn from them? Two big learnings that are confirmed again and again is that none of the **hunger, anger, loneliness** or **tiredness** lasts a long time nor do they prevent him from doing that for which he is responsible.

Signed: _____

Date: Jan 7, 2001

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

JK000181

JK



**Sisters of
Saint Francis**

Congregational Offices
Assisi Heights
Box 4900
Rochester, MN 55903
Tel: 507/282-7441
Fax: 507/282-7762

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Two-month Report
Date: March 16, 2001

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack is comfortable with the ordinary things going ordinarily well. He looks for nor needs no more than that.
- * Jack had a good experience at St. Luke's. What has been growthful in his self-assessment has been confirmed by staff there.
- * Jack is giving a Lenten retreat for the Assisi Community Center and finds that creative activity growthful for himself, first, and then gladly gives to those who come to the retreat.
- * Jack continues to be very intentional about his ministry here at Assisi Heights: presence to the Sisters, attentive presider, carefully prepared and well received homilies, closeness to our Sisters as they prepare to move from this life into the next etc. . .
- * Jack continues fidelity to his contract: spiritual direction, support groups, Twelve Step groups, and his own Spiritual practices especially meditation and spiritual reading. I sense a self-possession that confirms this.
- * With Holy Week and Easter coming with more stressful activity, I trust Jack will do what he needs to do to continue faithfulness to the whole of his life: body, mind, spirit, and adjust ministry to the committed hours.

Signed: _____

Date: March 22, 2001

*"We desire the
Spirit of God at
work in all of us."*

JK000186



ACADEMY OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

CORPORATE TITLE OF

SISTERS OF THE THIRD ORDER REGULAR OF SAINT FRANCIS
OF THE CONGREGATION OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

PHONE 507/282-7441
FAX: 507/282-7762

1001 14 ST NW, SUITE 100 • ASSISI HEIGHTS
ROCHESTER, MINNESOTA 55901-2525

To: Rev Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Two-month Report
Date: May, 7, 2001

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * The experience of Lent, Holy Week and Easter was demanding yet Jack brought a contemplative and meaningful perspective to it all in simple ways.
- * Then in the more ordinary events Jack is content, sometimes through struggle, with the routineness of every day. His choice around that is conscious and deliberate.
- * Jack continues to know the value of being firm about boundaries with persons and setting those firmly early in the relationship.
- * The death of our _____ allowed Jack to minister in ways new to him and to our Leadership Team. He was so pastoral to all of us but especial to them.
- * Jack continues to be faithful about daily prayer; this includes praying the scriptures and then from that prayer doing the daily more brief homilies and the longer ones for the Sundays. As he is moved to being converted so he moves the Assembly.
- * Jack continues to participate in ongoing spiritual direction, priest support group, twelve-step meetings etc...

Signed:

Date: _____

May 8, 2001

JK000187



ACADEMY OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

CORPORATE TITLE OF

SISTERS OF THE THIRD ORDER REGULAR OF SAINT FRANCIS
OF THE CONGREGATION OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

PHONE 507/282-7441
FAX: 507/282-7762

1001 14 ST NW, SUITE 100 • ASSISI HEIGHTS
ROCHESTER, MINNESOTA 55901-2525

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Two-month Report
Date: July 3, 2001

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack continues to be happy in his ministry with the Sisters and the Sisters are happy with his ministry to them.
- * A celebration of the above observation was the celebration of his Jubilee (his ordination twenty-five years ago, which we at Assisi Heights celebrated twice, the first for the community of Sisters at Assisi heights; the second for his invited guests, among them his parents, grandmother, his sister, other extended family members, and friends. There was such mutual support of Jack on the part of many different people and he has indicated that this was a very significant event for him.
- * He continues to be faithful to reading, study and prayer all of which are evident in his manner of presiding at Eucharist and his homilies, including the funerals of our Sisters. He has come to know them so well.
- * Evident also is his presence, sensitivity and carefulness with which he graces the Sisters at other Sacramental moments.
- * He continues to be faithful to his twelve-step program, Spiritual Direction, and support group.
- * He will be with us at our congregational meeting as we converse about our future which happens the first weekend in July. He looks forward to that.

Signed: _

Date: 7/5/2001

JK000188



ACADEMY OF ~~OUR LADY OF~~ LOURDES

CORPORATE TITLE OF

SISTERS OF THE THIRD ORDER REGULAR OF SAINT FRANCIS

OF THE CONGREGATION OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

PHONE 507/282-7441
FAX: 507/282-7762

1001 14 ST NW, SUITE 100 • ASSISI HEIGHTS
ROCHESTER, MINNESOTA 55901-2525

July 3, 2001

Rev. Edward McGrath
Vicar Judicial, Diocese of Winona
Pastoral Center, Box 588
Winona, MN 55987-0588

Dear Ed,

It feels appropriate for me once again as I reflect on the past years of reporting about Jack Krough's contract and recovery program to ask: is it time to move the frequency of the reports to every quarter? He is now indeed into the yearly report at St. Luke's and I am in communication with Jack frequently and observe him almost daily while he is ministering at Assisi Heights. All seems to be going well. There is an ordinariness about him and his ministry here, and a contentedness on his and my part. All of this speaks of healthy activity on his part. If anything about this would change or cause a concern on my part, I would be in touch with you immediately.

Unless I hear otherwise from you I will move in this direction. The next report then will be sent after the month of September, meaning it will be dated the first week in October. I will of course abide by your decision. I realize that my commitment is to the diocese. I feel privileged to be walking with Jack in this way.

Thank you and blessed summer days to you!

JK000189



Office of the Chancellor

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PASTORAL CENTER

17 July 2001

Assisi Heights Convent
1001 NW 14th Street
Rochester, MN 55901

Dear

Thank you for your letter of 3 July and your periodic report. I agree with your suggestion that it is time to move to a quarterly report. I will look for your next report around 15 September.

We are appreciative of your willingness to undertake this service to Fr. Krough and his accountability. You have approached this service with diligence and joy.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

Very Reverend Edward F. McGrath
Chancellor and Vicar Judicial

Cc: Fr. Michael Hoepfner
Fr. Jack Krough
Ms. P.J. Thompson

55 West Sanborn Street ■ PO Box 588 ■ Winona, MN 55987
Telephone: 507/454-4643 ■ Fax: 507/454-8106 ■ E-mail: emcgrath@dow.org

JK000190



ACADEMY O

= LOURDES

CORPORATE TITLE OF

SISTERS OF THE THIRD ORDER REGULAR OF SAINT FRANCIS
OF THE CONGREGATION OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

PHONE 507/282-7441
FAX: 507/282-7762

1001 14 ST NW, SUITE 100 • ASSISI HEIGHTS
ROCHESTER, MINNESOTA 55901-2525

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Quarterly Report
Date: September 12, 2001

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS--CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

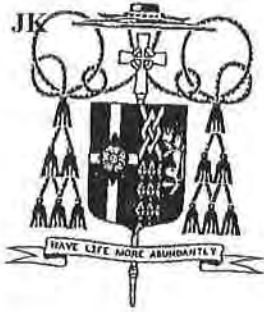
- * What seems really clear and is affirmed is that ordinariness of life is the best approach to life and the most healthy. There is satisfaction in that for Jack and he does that faithfully.
- * Jack has just returned from St Luke's and is feeling affirmed by the experience and the acknowledgment of his recovery process.
- * Jack continues to be invited to present programs here at the Heights and elsewhere. He chooses carefully to do those for which he knows he has gifts and declines others.
- * He acknowledges that it is time for vacation! It has been a long stretch without being away from the Heights. This is noticed by the way he likes to preach but right now needs to have a break from it. He is tired, knows it and says it!
- * What is special about this vacation is the study pilgrimage to Assisi! He wants truly for it to be that, and we want that for him too. He is really looking forward to that and it begins in just a few days.
- * For the rest of what is now truly ordinary and routine in his life, Jack continues his program: daily prayer practices, spiritual direction, support groups, 12-step meetings, and identifying and naming it when the HALT acronym needs his attention and he converses about that with any one of these groups or with me.

Signed: _____

Date: _____

Sept 13, 2001

JK000194



DIOCESE OF WINONA
BISHOP'S OFFICE

55 West Sanborn Street, P.O. Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987

507-454-4643
507-454-8106 (Fax)

September 17, 2001

Rev. John L Krouh

Rochester, MN 55901

Dear Father Jack:

Thank you for your letter of August 22, 2001 informing me that you will be on the Franciscan Study Pilgrimage from September 14th through October 7th.

By the time this letter arrives at Assisi Heights, you will already have left for your study program. However, I want you to know that I am delighted that you are taking part in this experience and I am sure it will be a great help to you personally as well as in your ministry to the Rochester Franciscan Sisters.

I know that you will enjoy Italy no matter what and that you, like everyone else, will fall in love with Assisi and the beautiful spiritual experience that it is.

Jack, I am so happy that you are doing well at Assisi Heights and that you have found such a meaningful ministry. I congratulate you, I encourage you to continue in your programs and I praise God for your gifts.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

✠ Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington
Bishop of Winona

BJH:jt

JK000360



DIOCESE OF WINONA
BISHOP'S OFFICE

55 West Sanborn Street, P.O. Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987

507-454-4643
507-454-8106 (Fax)

September 17, 2001

Rev. John L Krough

Dear Father Jack:

Thank you for your letter of August 22, 2001 informing me that you will be on the Franciscan Study Pilgrimage from September 14th through October 7th.

By the time this letter arrives at Assisi Heights, you will already have left for your study program. However, I want you to know that I am delighted that you are taking part in this experience and I am sure it will be a great help to you personally as well as in your ministry to the Rochester Franciscan Sisters.

I know that you will enjoy Italy no matter what and that you, like everyone else, will fall in love with Assisi and the beautiful spiritual experience that it is.

Jack, I am so happy that you are doing well at Assisi Heights and that you have found such a meaningful ministry. I congratulate you, I encourage you to continue in your programs and I praise God for your gifts.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

✠ Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington
Bishop of Winona

BJH:jt

JK000366

JK 2000 22222 <input type="checkbox"/>			
b Employer's name, address, and ZIP code		1 Total amount wages	2 Federal income tax withheld
		24246.69	1840.00
c Employer's name, address, and ZIP code		3 Social Security wages	4 State income tax withheld
		24376.00	1549.78
d Employer's Federal ID number		5 Medicare wages and tips	6 Medicare tax withheld
		24996.70	362.39
e Employer's state ID number		7 Social Security tax	8 Medicare tax
f Federal, state, and local income tax withheld		9 State or local income tax	10 Local income tax withheld
g Employee's Social Security number		11 Unemployment paid	12a Cost of employer's health plan
h Employer's name, address, and ZIP code		13a Social Security plan	13b
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
i Employer's name, address, and ZIP code		14 Other	12c
j Employer's name, address, and ZIP code		E 749.90	12d
k State Employer's Identification Number		15 State wages, tips and allowances	16 State income tax
		24246.69	759.00
l Employer's name, address, and ZIP code		17 Local wages, tips, and allowances	18 Local income tax

Form **W-2** Wage and Tax Statement
 Copy A For Social Security Administration—Send this entire page with Form 941 to the Social Security Administration; photocopies are not acceptable.

2002
 (Rev. February 2002)

30-1009547 Department of the Treasury—Internal Revenue Service
 For Privacy Act and Paperwork Reduction Act Notice see separate instructions

AWLFED 101 2 0000
 10/02



ACADEMY C F LOURDES

CORPORATE TITLE OF

SISTERS OF THE THIRD ORDER REGULAR OF SAINT FRANCIS
OF THE CONGREGATION OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

PHONE 507/282-7441
FAX: 507/282-7762

1001 14 ST NW, SUITE 100 • ASSISI HEIGHTS
ROCHESTER, MINNESOTA 55901-2525

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From:
Re: Quarterly Report
Date: March 14, 2002

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS—CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack is very present to his ministry here at Assisi Heights, especially during this Lenten season. His continued presence at our Worship Committee meetings is creative as well as challenging. He is honest in both these activities.
- * He has presented and continues to lead others in Centering Prayer and I observe that in doing that he is faithful to that kind of prayer daily.
- * He has shared with me those times when HALT calls him to be honest with himself and others and does turn to his support system at those times: 12-step meetings, priest support group, spiritual direction, and exercise.
- * His Spirit life continues to be nurtured through daily meditation, Liturgy of the Hours and Spiritual Reading.
- * He continues to be a very focused Presider at Eucharist with meaningful and well prepared homilies.
- * There continues to be an ordinariness of life for Jack, and he is very careful about boundaries, as well as dealing with feelings as they occur and he does so appropriately.

Signed:

Date:

March 14, 2002

JK000197

JK

Subject: Hi Father Jack!

Date: Thu, 21 Mar 2002 16:10:46 -0600

From:

To:

Dear Father Jack,

Thank you very much for spending the time on Saturday and after Tuesday's class with me.

I neglected all e-mail yesterday, even to a friend in Taiwan who was going to take a look at my physics game yesterday with someone who works in translation. Walking outside in the cold just now, it suddenly struck me that I'd yet to write you, so you're also helping me motivate to get in touch with him. If I recall correctly, you were going to e-mail me the title of Rohr's new book once I got in touch with you, though there may have been another title as well.

the associate pastor of invited me to meet with him this morning regarding the peace meeting that will first meet this Sunday afternoon at . It seems to be a very hopeful step for the congregation, one in which we come to listen much more than to speak or act, to awaken to what injury our country is visiting around the world, to what the scriptures have to say, and what God is calling this congregation to be and do in response. The opening expectation is that we will need to be patient, maybe listening a long time before we are called to act. said that it will need to involve growth in spiritual discernment that, as a whole, the congregation has neglected for too long.

So, it's an encouraging time in my life for many reasons.

=)

Yours,

mailbox:/workspace/System%20Folder/
Preferences/Netscape%20Users/

JK000198

JK

Subject: Re: Hi Father Jack!
Date: Thu, 21 Mar 2002 21:39:18 EST
From:
To:

Dear

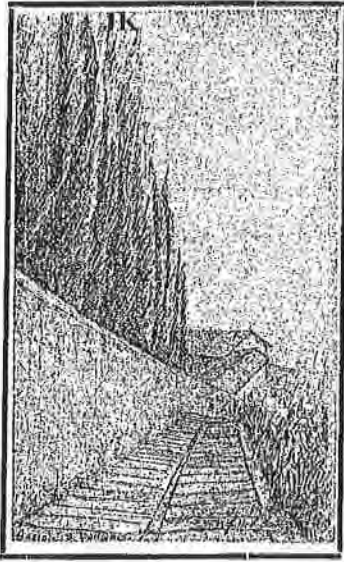
I am happy to hear from you. It sounds like your pastor-friend is on a spiritual path that will touch the lives of your congregation. Perhaps your awakening will have the same effect. It is always wonderful to see what happens when that discernment process is attentive to the Spirit.

The book by Richard Rohr that I mentioned is: Hope against Darkness. Rohr as a Franciscan certainly sees Francis as a model of discipleship for this time which he describes as an "age of anxiety." Rohr invites us to really consider the values by which we have lived and the values we want to live to save ourselves and our world.

I am happy to know you.

Pace e Bene (Francis' greeting "peace and all good to you."
--Jack

JK000199



25 March 2002

Dear PJ

Thank you so very much for the card of encouragement. I am deeply moved that you understand how much I have been affected by recent events and the subsequent discussion in the media.

It has been a very difficult month, not only for me, but for all who love and serve the Church. But I have felt the pain acutely and have needed to use all my resources to continue this path of discipleship that I am called to travel. I am lucky to have developed a support group with whom I have talked regularly in the past weeks. This is one of the greatest gifts God has given me. Five years ago I was isolated, trying to live with little support and no one with whom I could be totally honest. Now I do not walk alone. I have people in my support group, 12-Step Group, priests' group, and SLI alumni that I trust and who tell me the truth, sometimes to console me and other times to challenge me. And they have probably been working overtime the last few weeks.

I also want you to know that I have decided to do a little work with _____, the therapist with whom I worked before and after SLI. The fears and anxiety I have been feeling suggests that there is some more work for me to do at this time. Like everyone in this world, I am in a lifelong process of growth and healing; I feel OK about doing a little more intensive work at this time.

Again, PJ, I am so thankful for your concern. God continues to be very good to me. I am ministering in a community I love and encourages the best within me, I live with brother priests who respect and support me, I am a priest of a diocese that seeks to heal and redeem, and I am loved by God beyond my wildest imagination.

Pace e Bene

Jack Krough

PREGHIERA
DAVANTI
AL CROCIFISSO
DI SAN DAMIANO

O alto
et glorioso Dio,
illumina el core mio.
Damme
fede dericta,
speranza certa,
carità perfecta,
humilità profonda,
senno
e cognoscemento
che io servi
li toi
commandamenti.
Amen.

S Francesco d'Assisi

T

JK

Subject: Richard Rohr retreat
Date: Tue, 26 Mar 2002 00:29:38 -0600
From:
To:

Dear Father Jack,

In an attempt to find an address that would reach Richard Rohr, I went to the website of the Center for Action and Contemplation. One of the retreats caught my eye, and I'm wondering if you think it would be good for me or I for it.

Yesterday's meeting initiated by people's concern for world justice issues mentioned in sermon a week ago didn't go as I'd hoped it would. We opened with a reading from Nehemiah 8:1 through 9:5, followed by about 13 minutes of silence and then selected readings from Richard Rohr's contemplative seeing of the doctrine of the cross at the end of "Everything Belongs". I then related some of the discussion with about what we saw as the essence of what we were about (discernment; action likely to flow out of awakening to God's presence, but action not in itself being the goal, etc.).

My hope was that the magnitude of facing injustices of the "only remaining superpower" and our pax americana would afford the realization that we are helpless unless we are empowered by God's spirit. Then, even if we were moved in the end to take action that we would normally consider to be within our power to do, the discernment of God's spirit in the bigger issues would have led us to rely on God's spirit in the "small" issues as well.

But some people moved rather quickly into the realm of things we could do within the church, slipping into the old pattern of doing things through our abilities, seemingly well within our power and grasp. Not bad, per se, but not the path that I am convinced allows us to become reliable instruments for God's use.

Now, after the let-down and subsequent discussion with I have some glimmer of the idea that perhaps I need that which I am trying to give. In order for me to be able to help others understand, perhaps I need to lay aside my desire for others to understand, and to pursue the path of discernment and prayer by which I may or may not be used to help others comprehend.

In any case, it is later than I wish it were. So goodnight Father Jack.

Yours,

>From the website regarding the retreat:

A Rite of Passage for Men with Fr. Richard Rohr, OFM
Sunday, August 25 ? Thursday, August 29,
2002
Ghost Ranch, Abiquiu, New Mexico

Although last year was supposed to be the last time this retreat was offered, the overwhelming demand from last year and a request from the Franciscans, is allowing us to offer "the Rites" one more time. This is not just a men's

JK000201

JK

Subject: Re: Richard Rohr retreat
Date: Tue, 26 Mar 2002 21:46:41 EST
From:
To:

Dear

I have had experiences similar to what you describe in your letter, wanting to express more global concerns and being frustrated when others find that too removed from their own experience. But then, people are where they are and the effective prophet is able to keep on eye on the far horizon while asking others to take that one small step. Without knowing the details, a congregation willing to talk about issues at home, that they can actually impact and experience some discomfort in facing is very hopeful. A little book that began to open my eyes to effective social ministry was written by the American Zen teacher and activist, Bernie Glassman. Check out his little book "Instructions to the Cook." He has been very effective and his approach is very wise. I did an evening program with him last year.

I think Richard Rohr has a lot to offer and you might enjoy participating in a retreat. But build a good foundation in Centering Prayer open to the contemplative. At the Center is the God we seek.

With the Blessings of this Holy Week
--Jack

JK000202

JK

Subject: a lesson

Date: Mon, 08 Apr 2002 07:43:36 -0500

From:

To:

Dear Father Jack,

Last week through the course of centering prayer and reading the Covenant Discipleship handbook (covenant discipleship groups are a Methodist tradition that grew out of the class meetings of John Wesley), I learned a lesson about discipline that is coloring everything. That is, while praying on at least two different occasions, it seemed that the 20 minutes were drawing to a close, but I'd felt so distracted that I wanted to keep going--I wanted the time to be more effective. But it came to me that it is the discipline of holding to a set time that keeps the time out of my control. Judging the time as to its efficacy or worth doesn't even fit into the picture.

It seems to me that this is the key to not judging: if we have (or think we have) any control over something, then we necessarily judge it, and God's freedom to transform us is limited. This goes for meetings as well, and perhaps for other people as well.

It's been a very busy, but fruitful time these past couple weeks. I'm in the process of starting a company to sell the physics game that has been my project of a year and a half. Two weeks ago, I worked furiously to change the game to install properly on PCs--since I'm a Macintosh user, I'd written a more Macintosh style installer, but a contact at a company asked for four copies, and it suddenly seemed important to make it look as finished as possible. That made for a very busy couple of days; I didn't know I could learn or do that much in such a short amount of time.

Very exhausting, but also very rewarding.

I hope you are well.

Yours,

p.s.: I did complete the application for the Rites of Passage, which I should hear about by June 1 (if memory serves).

JK000203

JK

Subject: Re: a lesson

Date: Wed, 10 Apr 2002 22:07:54 EDT

From:

To:

Dear

It sounds like you have been very busy professionally and that you continue to "agitate the mystery" (as a Theology professor of mine used to like to put it). I am recovering from leading a workshop/retreat yesterday for all of the chaplains serving the Mayo Clinic hospitals. It is always interesting when you are leading a group of clergy people, but they seemed to find the program worthwhile...but 8 hours of fairly steady work left me tired.

One of my unwritten rules for Centering Prayer is never evaluate. In prayer, especially this prayer of presence, God does not promise to take us somewhere else; the promise is that we will find ourselves in a "real" place. Whatever happens happens. Sometimes if a pattern begins to develop it is useful to talk to a spiritual director about it as sometimes blocks and misconceptions may develop. You also got a rather abbreviated introduction to Centering Prayer, so it may need to be fleshed out when you have some time.

I am interested to hear that you find a connection between what you are developing and the insights of John Wesley, truly a saint.

Keep trusting...keep loving...keep growing in the Spirit

--JLK

JK000204



23 April 2002

Most Reverend Bernard Harrington, D.D.
Bishop of Winona
PO Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Bishop Harrington:

I have always been strengthened by the knowledge that you were praying for me. I just wanted to write and let you know that I pray for you each day as you lead our Church during these painful days. I know that, in the end, the compassion of our Christ will heal the anger and judgments of this moment. And I know that your ministry to the people and priests of our diocese will embody that compassion for us all.

I am so grateful to God for your trust in me and my ministry. Every day I give thanks for this chance to share in the priesthood of Christ. My chaplaincy at Assisi Heights seems at times to be a ministry of bridge building, but most often it is just a wonderful chance to minister to the sisters here. The opportunity to share at workshops and retreats what I have learned of prayer is also very fulfilling. I also value my work with the tribunal. And to my surprise, some of my brother priests come to share their stories with me and in those moments the healing goes both ways.

I know that in these difficult days there are those who can no longer serve in any priestly capacity; I am so thankful that each person's circumstances can be considered in making these difficult decisions. I am overwhelmed by God's compassion and love and pray that victims and all who have caused them injury and pain will find the healing that the Church offers us all. Bishop, I will never forget your ministry to me.

Your son and brother in Christ,

Rev Jack L. Krough

JLKrough

JK000364

Subject: Re: a lesson

Date: Wed, 15 May 2002 18:30:14 -0500

From:

To:

References: 1

Dear Father Jack,

I've purchased all the books you recommended--Rohr's Hope Against Darkness, Bernie Glassman's Instructions to the Cook, and two of the Centering Prayer books, one by Pennington, the other by Keating. Started with Rohr---am almost finished after taking it quite slowly and reflectively--and think Glassman will be next, but I'd also like to begin Open Mind, Open Heart.

Lately, I've been very sad. My prayer for tears was answered a few weeks ago while visiting in Richmond. Since then, almost every time I pray with somebody else, I begin sobbing. I'm also fighting a lot of the old programming, and comments from my dad's letters are haunting me. The desire to contend with his statements (as well as statements by preachers he took me to hear and audio tapes we listened to, along with many other things I've heard that run along similar lines) through argument and persuasion is strong, but that path seems to be the Gordian knot you described during the Facing Fear workshop. The thought keeps returning to me that when those memories come to mind, I need to hold them without engaging them, inviting God to heal and transform them and me. Sometimes I say 'I forgive you', but sometimes that feels like a cheap escape to avoid the pain.

I don't know how to let go of the past and the cloud it forms over the future. Part of me wants to destroy the letters, but then I think about my brothers and sister going through this later on; I want to be able to show them, if they begin to struggle with this, a clearer picture of who our dad is, to be able to give them a grasp on him that is so hard to pin down during conversation. Also, sometimes I'm afraid that I might go back to his path, and want to have a concrete reminder of where it leads. The promise of not being destined to become my father has been a powerful salvific message of the gospel for me for several years.

His comments feel like a Catch-22: when I try to point out something that they do, I'm condemned for not obeying Jesus' command to forgive and for playing God by imputing them with motives; yet they do the very same thing to others, and when I point out that, he quotes the Bible to show that the people he condemns are breaking God's commandments. I'm even scared now to read the Bible because some of what they do has very strong precedence between its covers; yet I'm afraid not to read it because of the teachings that on our own, we are led astray by satan. I no longer believe this, but at some level, I seem to. I want to be converted at my deepest level so that, as Richard Rohr says, I know that God is good, the world is good, and I am good. The latter two are the exact opposite of what my dad says ('supported' by many biblical quotes, and the first is not really supported by the picture he paints of God, even though he insists that that picture results from God's goodness), but they must be true, and I need to know it at a level that is beyond argument.

At times, I dream of going on a long retreat of silence and trying to let (or would that be an attempt to force?) God deal with all this. But then I recall Rohr's comments about reaching the center by living the circumference that forms our daily lives. Rohr speaks of redemptive suffering, so that has been my perspective. All this pain and darkness is the cauldron of transformation. But I wonder if spiritual direction might help to ensure that it is indeed redemptive and not just suffering.

JK000205

(Trying not to go on and on...) My outlook has been none to good of late. I can't seem to see any hope in the present (Part of this is probably linked to my dad as well. He and the people he listens to seem to think that the world is going to hell in a handbasket. He often speaks of politics, and it is always a dark view, unless it's about the Republican party. The USA used to be Christian--when, I can't tell from history, but in his eyes, it seems to span the time when we fought for independence over financial matters, slavery was legal, the Constitution didn't recognize women as fully human, domestic abuse had to be borne, colonization and white man's burden ruled the day, segregation was legal, military overthrow of democratically elected leaders in Central America was backed by the CIA, and the US put billions of dollars into nuclear weapons instead of schools and infrastructure that would have had much greater impact on defeating communism and would have helped diminish poverty to boot--but now is in the throws of paganism. Etc.) From my own point of view, I see the current administration as squeezing all the mileage they can out of a terrible tragedy to further its aims at militarization. I see the evangelism (or hatemongering) crusades and radio programs giving people something to stand for, but a something that is based on insiders versus outsiders, saved versus unsaved, children of God versus children of the devil--a something that places tremendous power in the hands of people who preach the subservience of women, the chosen status of America, and the necessity of America to "remain" morally pure so that God does not "vomit [it] out" and cause it to lose its "mantle of protection". I see the juggernaught of US military backed corporate led globalization. I see the former School of the Americas (now WHISC). I see the financial and confidence undercutting of the public schoolsystem. I see greed for progress leading to higher coal and oil consumption. I see the poor being blamed for their poverty. I see darkness. All the more reason I'm glad for Rohr's Hope Against Darkness, but I remain terribly afraid.

This is not to say that every day is so dark. I do believe there to be a light at the end of the tunnel. I believe that this is part of the process of making me into a "useable one for God". I believe that, in part because of this, I will be able to find hope in any circumstances. God is my hope. Centering prayer has been a good anchor to the beginning and end of each day (usually both, but at least once every day), though lately it has been even harder than normal to pull out of daydreams and remain in the present, even using my word.

In opposition to the above darkness, I want to spread light. I want to introduce people to the God whom Jesus re-introduced to the world almost two thousand years ago. But I also know that if I do it, instead of God using me to do it, I will become a variation on what I just described, but with different issues and groups. I bring this request to prayer, wanting to be useable, wanting to transform the world as Jesus did, though sometimes afraid at what that path would mean if I were to marry. It seems easy to sacrifice oneself if one is only oneself.

Whew. Enough for now.

I hope your past few weeks have been light filled. I wonder if I might be able to take you up on your offer to flesh out Centering Prayer?

Love,

p.s.: I received an e-mail indicating that I am accepted to the Rites of Passage led by Richard Rohr. I'm very much looking forward to it. I hope that it will help with some of this process, perhaps--as I hoped it might be when writing the application--to mark the end of my current struggle against the past and usher in the beginning of my life lived for whatever it is God has for me to do.

JK

Subject: Re: a lesson

Date: Fri, 17 May 2002 13:11:02 EDT

From:

To:

Dear

Thank you for sharing yourself with me in such an honest fashion. I certainly understand the pain that you are feeling and the confusion as well. Sometimes it is very hard and it seems like there is no end to it in sight. Hopefully you have the wisdom to know that this journey to healing in grace cannot be made alone. I think the very fact that in the Gospel Jesus didn't call individuals, but called them into community is so that the Holy Spirit could work through the bonds of love and compassion that unite us and cause us to resemble the Trinity which is also a community within God.

I will be happy to sit down with you, listen, and see if we can discern how the spirit is moving in your life right now. If that would be of help to you, please call me. I am rarely in my office, so call me at my private number and we will set up an appointment: 281-0944

With my prayers and the love of Christ
Fr Jack

JK000207

Bishop Bernard Harrington
55 West Sanborn St.
P.O. Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Bishop Harrington:

Last Saturday, May 18, I met with Father Jack Krough in his office at Assissi Heights in Rochester, Minnesota. While there, Father Jack touched me in inappropriate places and ways. Later that evening, in his apartment at the rectory, he made further inappropriate invitations, but no touch resulted.

I was first introduced to Father Jack at a Saturday Lenten workshop that he led in March, at which occasion he taught me centering prayer. He also invited me to the final class of introduction to centering prayer that he was leading the following Tuesday evening. Since then, we have been in communication by e-mail on four different occasions.

The several weeks preceding last Saturday were increasingly dark for me, so last week I sent Father Jack an e-mail relating my hopelessness and asking to take him up on his offer for spiritual direction. Father Jack gave me his private number to call, and Saturday morning we arranged to meet at his Assissi Heights office at four that afternoon.

The touch involved touching my bottom, kissing my neck, laying me on the floor and holding me as would a lover while kissing my neck and touching my belly just above my belt through my t-shirt, sliding his hand across the cloth of my jeans over my penis

JK000425

as his hand moved to grab hold of my left upper thigh, pulling me onto my side and placing his right leg in the crotch of my legs, and lifting my shirt in the process of blessing my heart with holy oil. Except for the blessing, for which he arose, during most of these events while I was on the floor, he continued to speak words of Jesus, his mouth less than five inches from mine, with his hand behind my head, holding my head in that position.

The e-mail correspondences relate the development of my relationship with Father Jack and show part of the struggles that led me to ask to meet with him last Saturday. I also recorded an audio cd on Monday night in which I relate further details of the Saturday events and of my spiritual, emotional, and mental state going into that meeting. These materials are available for review.

Please begin an investigation into the sexual misconduct of Father Jack Krough. You can contact me through _____ She has offered to accompany me to any interview you would like to conduct with me, so please contact her to make all necessary arrangements.

Thank you for your time and concern.

Sincerely,

JK

PJ Thompson

From:
Sent: Wednesday, June 05, 2002 11:46 AM
To: 'PJ Thompson'
Subject: RE: Website for St. Luke's Institute

Thank you for the web site, P.J. Interestingly, yesterday on Natl. Public Radio there was a story regarding St. Lukes. I wonder if you or Fr. Hoepfner caught the story. The text can be found on npr.org website.

Thank you also for the prompt and professional manner by which you and Father Hoepfner handled this allegation.

One follow-up question that we had: Can you tell us whether the community was informed of the reason for the administrative leave? Additionally, your policy also refers to consideration of informing parishes that the priest was previously assigned to. One reason given in the policy for disclosure to the current and former parishes was to allow any others who may have been harmed to come forward. Was consideration given in this case to inform any former parishes?

I would be happy to serve as a resource for the diocese in any way that would be helpful. I remain faithful and committed to the Catholic church and at the same time not reluctant to advocate for changes that will help victims heal and prevent future misconduct.

-----Original Message-----

From: PJ Thompson [mailto:pthomps@down.org]
Sent: Monday, June 03, 2002 2:42 PM
To:
Subject: Website for St. Luke's Institute

Thank you again for making arrangements to meet with Fr. Hoepfner and I this past week. I recognize that you had to make some adjustments in your schedule. During our meeting, I mentioned that I had downloaded information about St. Luke's Institute. I felt that it might be more beneficial to simply give you the site so that you could browse through the information and copy what you felt was most beneficial.

Thanks again for your candor and professionalism. I have put your card in my file as a future reference to serve as an advocate or resource for information regarding sexual abuse and victim assistance. We appreciated the time you spent and the work you do.

Website: www.sli.org

Blessings,
PJ Thompson, Director
Office of Human Resources



ACADEMY OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

CORPORATE TITLE OF

SISTERS OF THE THIRD ORDER REGULAR OF SAINT FRANCIS
OF THE CONGREGATION OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

PHONE 507/282-7441
FAX: 507/282-7762

1001 14 ST NW, SUITE 100 • ASSISI HEIGHTS
ROCHESTER, MINNESOTA 55901-2525

To: Rev. Edward McGrath
From: _____ and Jack Krough
Re: Quarterly Report
Date: June 10, 2002

CONCRETE OBSERVATIONS---CONTRACT AND BUDDING SIGNS:

- * Jack was very active in the planning and living out our Lenten season here at the Heights. His homilies were always so well planned and integrated well what was hoped for the community. He was also attentive to the Sisters with his visits to healthcare especially.
- * In February, Jack began to experience depression, and in March when news concerning the Bishops and sexual abuse was much in the media, anxiety heightened. He shared this with me and made the appropriate choice of seeing his doctor and began medication for the depression / anxiety.
- * Jack continued to perform his ministry and do so very well - - - that is, all the events of Holy Week and presence to our Sisters.
- * In the midst of that he was aware of the times when HALT called him to be attentive to feelings and speak of those freely during regular meetings with his spiritual director, and his support groups: priests and 12-step program.
- * When about ten days ago he was made aware of the false allegations made against him, of course he was devastated and again more anxious than his own resources could carry him. He spoke to me immediately, as well as his support group, his psychotherapist and the Congregational and the Assisi Heights leadership. I affirm and laud his honesty, and fully support him at this time.

Signed: _____

Date: _____

June 10, 2002

JK000209

JK



ROCHESTER FRANCISCAN COMMUNITY

SISTERS OF THE THIRD ORDER REGULAR OF SAINT FRANCIS
OF THE CONGREGATION OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

PHONE 507/282-7441
FAX: 507/282-7762

1001 14 ST NW, SUITE 100 • ASSISI HEIGHTS
ROCHESTER, MINNESOTA 55901-2525

June 11, 2002

TO: The Rochester Franciscan Community
FROM:

Summer greetings to all!

There are two pieces of information that do not seem appropriate for CONNECTIONS nor the e-mail but are significant to share with you. Hence this separate mailing.

1. On Wednesday, May 29, 2002, Bishop Harrington of the Winona Diocese asked the Chaplain at Assisi Heights to take of leave of absence for an undetermined period of time. The Sisters here were gathered and told about this change on Thursday, May 30th. They were asked not to speculate and not to give the information to others. Prayer and respect were the common responses of all involved. I assume that the whole of the Rochester Franciscan Community will receive this news with the same sensitivity. As there is more to share this will be done.

This leave of absence did affect the Jubilee celebration in that it demonstrated the marvelous flexibility of the class. Nothing could derail their day of jubilation.

COPY

JK000210

JK



ACADEMY OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

CORPORATE TITLE OF

SISTERS OF THE THIRD ORDER REGULAR OF SAINT FRANCIS
OF THE CONGREGATION OF OUR LADY OF LOURDES

PHONE 507/282-7441
FAX: 507/282-7762

1001 14 ST NW, SUITE 100 • ASSISI HEIGHTS
ROCHESTER, MINNESOTA 55901-2525

June 16, 2002

Father Jack L. Krough
Priests' Residence
1315 12th Ave. NW
Rochester, MN 55901-1744

Dear Jack,

I hope that, as you return from Saint Luke's, you are renewed as well as challenged. The Sisters here at Assisi Heights certainly have kept you in heart and prayer.

Jack, I am enclosing a copy of a communication that went out to the Rochester Franciscan Community on June 11th. I also want to share with you several pieces of conversations that I have had with Father Hoepfner in relation to you and your ministry at Assisi Heights. In initial telephone exchanges with Fr. Hoepfner I indicated that your living at Assisi Heights is not an option. As we talked about your future ministry here I asked that, after Saint Luke's and after Bishop Harrington makes his decisions regarding your future ministry, I would like to have a detailed conversation with you and representatives from the diocese before any reassignment to Assisi Heights.

In addition, Jack, on Friday, June 15th, in a telephone conversation with Father Hoepfner I told him that the trip to Assisi, Italy, is not a part of your official ministry at Assisi Heights and that we will not be responsible for any supervision during this trip. Father Hoepfner asked if you had been invited to partake in this trip and I replied that, as far as I could determine, the leader of the pilgrimage did ask to you accompany her as a personal favor.

All of this may seem quite stiff, Jack. I hope that, together, we can discern the best possible future for you and for the Rochester Franciscans in the near future. Meanwhile, I know your recovery program continues, your faith deepens with the daily highs and lows, and we pray for you daily.

Peace to you,

Cc: Bishop Harrington
Father Michael Hoepfner
Congregational Leadership Team

JK000211

COPY

JK

CONTROL NUMBER:

EMPLOYER:
 MUTUAL OF OMAHA INSURANCE COMPANY
 MUTUAL OF OMAHA PLAZA
 OMAHA NE 68175

IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS:
 EMPLOYER'S: EMPLOYEE'S:

RECIPIENT:
 MH 55987

1. WAGES, TIPS AND OTHER COMPENSATION.....	
2. FEDERAL INCOME TAX WITHHELD..	0.00
3. SOCIAL SECURITY WAGES.....	0.00
4. SOCIAL SECURITY TAX WITHHELD.	0.00
5. MEDICARE WAGES AND TIPS.....	0.00
6. MEDICARE TAX WITHHELD.....	0.00
7. SOCIAL SECURITY TIPS.....	0.00
8. ALLOCATED TIPS.....	0.00
9. ADVANCE EIC PAYMENT.....	0.00
11. NONQUALIFIED PLANS.....	0.00
12.	0.00
13. TYPE OF RETURN.....	
THIRD PARTY SICK PAY	
15. NAME OF STATE.....	MINNESOTA
EMPLOYER'S STATE NUMBER...	
16. STATE WAGES , TIPS ETC.....	
17. STATE INCOME TAX WITHHELD...	0.00
18. LOCAL WAGES, TIPS ETC.....	0.00
19. LOCAL INCOME TAX.....	0.00
20. NAME OF LOCALITY.....	

2003
 W-2 WAGE AND TAX STATEMENT
 COPY 1

STATE COPY

Connected to go to State the response to the O, Minn. to

THIS FORM MEETS SOCIAL SECURITY AND INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE GUIDELINES.
 FOR INQUIRIES CALL 402-351-3025

CONTROL NUMBER:

EMPLOYER:
 MUTUAL OF OMAHA INSURANCE COMPANY
 MUTUAL OF OMAHA PLAZA
 OMAHA NE 68175

IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS:
 EMPLOYER'S: EMPLOYEE'S:

RECIPIENT:

1. WAGES, TIPS AND OTHER COMPENSATION.....	
2. FEDERAL INCOME TAX WITHHELD..	0.00
3. SOCIAL SECURITY WAGES.....	0.00
4. SOCIAL SECURITY TAX WITHHELD.	0.00
5. MEDICARE WAGES AND TIPS.....	0.00
6. MEDICARE TAX WITHHELD.....	0.00
7. SOCIAL SECURITY TIPS.....	0.00
8. ALLOCATED TIPS.....	0.00
9. ADVANCE EIC PAYMENT.....	0.00
11. NONQUALIFIED PLANS.....	0.00
12.	0.00
13. TYPE OF RETURN.....	
THIRD PARTY SICK PAY	
15. NAME OF STATE.....	MINNESOTA
EMPLOYER'S STATE NUMBER...	
16. STATE WAGES , TIPS ETC.....	
17. STATE INCOME TAX WITHHELD...	0.00
18. LOCAL WAGES, TIPS ETC.....	0.00
19. LOCAL INCOME TAX.....	0.00
20. NAME OF LOCALITY.....	

2003
 W-2 WAGE AND TAX STATEMENT
 COPY 1

STATE COPY

THIS FORM MEETS SOCIAL SECURITY AND INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE GUIDELINES.
 FOR INQUIRIES CALL 402-351-3025

CONTROL NUMBER:

EMPLOYER:
 MUTUAL OF OMAHA INSURANCE COMPANY
 MUTUAL OF OMAHA PLAZA
 OMAHA NE 68175

IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS:
 EMPLOYER'S: EMPLOYEE'S:

RECIPIENT:

1. WAGES, TIPS AND OTHER COMPENSATION.....	
2. FEDERAL INCOME TAX WITHHELD..	0.00
3. SOCIAL SECURITY WAGES.....	0.00
4. SOCIAL SECURITY TAX WITHHELD.	0.00
5. MEDICARE WAGES AND TIPS.....	0.00
6. MEDICARE TAX WITHHELD.....	0.00
7. SOCIAL SECURITY TIPS.....	0.00
8. ALLOCATED TIPS.....	0.00
9. ADVANCE EIC PAYMENT.....	0.00
11. NONQUALIFIED PLANS.....	0.00
12.	0.00
13. TYPE OF RETURN.....	
THIRD PARTY SICK PAY	
15. NAME OF STATE.....	MINNESOTA
EMPLOYER'S STATE NUMBER...	
16. STATE WAGES , TIPS ETC.....	
17. STATE INCOME TAX WITHHELD...	0.00
18. LOCAL WAGES, TIPS ETC.....	0.00
19. LOCAL INCOME TAX.....	0.00
20. NAME OF LOCALITY.....	

2003
 W-2 WAGE AND TAX STATEMENT
 COPY D

FOR EMPLOYER'S RECORDS

THIS FORM MEETS SOCIAL SECURITY AND INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE GUIDELINES.
 FOR INQUIRIES CALL 402-351-3025

JK



Feast of All Saints

Most Reverend Bernard Harrington, DD
Bishop of Winona
P.O. Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Bishop Harrington:

After a recent "check-in" conversation with PJ Thompson, I wanted to write to let you know how much I value her ministry to me. I trust her. I appreciate her expectations of accountability and her interest in my spiritual and emotional life. I respect her. She knows the components necessary for a healthy life in recovery and asks insightful questions to assess compliance with my obligations. She is a compassionate professional which makes it easier to share the low and high points of my life. I am grateful that you assigned her to this difficult ministry.

A month ago I finished the manuscript of *Prodigal Blood*, a contemporary novel that imagines the days following the Prodigal Son's welcome home party. After making the revisions suggested by an editor-author-friend, I am now marketing it to literary agents. It is an extremely competitive market. Finding representation today for a book about a family's spiritual journey is especially challenging. I trust God to find an open door for "C.J. East's" work. In the meantime I am doing research for my next writing project.

I continue to hold you and the diocese in prayer at Mass and in the Liturgy of the Hours. I continue to treasure my semi-eremitic life and the ministry of prayer that it affords me. I hope that it helps to sustain you and the priests of the diocese in their work.

Pace e Bene,

JLKrough

JK000012

Meetings - Jack Knight

7 July	SLAA	online
11 July	SCA	Kerr
14 July	SLAA	online
18 July	SCA	B
21 July	SLAA	online
26 July	SLAA Mpls	Off

JK

Interview @ St. Pius X Rectory

Interviewers: Bishop Bernard J. Harrington, Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Ms. P.J. Thompson

Alleged perpetrator: Fr. Jack Krough

Bishop Harrington told Fr. Jack that the purpose of our visit with him was to further our investigation into a recent allegation that has come to our office regarding sexual misconduct involving him and

Can you tell us what happened when you met with this person?

Well, you know he had made an appointment to see me to talk about centering prayer and a number of things - a lot about his father who he had many issues with and...well, other things.

Where did you meet him?

I met with him up at my office.

Could you describe the meeting?

It was a good meeting - very emotional...

We talked awhile - we prayed

He wanted me to pray with him - we held hands

I anointed his head and his eyes and put my hand on his chest.

Did you use oil?

Yes. I used oil.

When you anointed his chest was it on his chest or over his shirt?

Over his shirt. I told him, open your heart.

Go on and continue to tell us what happened...

Well, he was in such pain - he was hurting and sobbing. I mean, he just crumbled.

When you spoke to him about Jesus, where was he in the room?

He was laying down.

Where were you?

...sitting next to him

Did you put your leg between his legs - no (looked confused)

Did you grab his thigh? - no

Why is he doing this? I don't understand, I was trying to help him.

Do you think he understands that you were trying to help him?

He had sent me a long e-mail - just all kinds of stuff with his family and his father and I said to him you need to do some spiritual direction with someone. I told him I would talk to him if he needed someone to talk to about things.

Did you offer him counseling or spiritual direction?

I offered nothing of that nature...just to talk.

After you were here, (indicating the rectory) what happened?

Well, I invited him after dinner to watch a movie.

What movie did you show?

It's a positive movie...it's about a dancer and is a wonderful example of someone reaching success out of struggles.

Was the name of the movie, Billy Elliot? - yes, it was Billy Elliot.

JK000014

JK

Where did you watch the movie?

We watched the movie down in my room.

Are you in the habit of taking people to your room? – have you taken others to your room?

Friends...just friends.

It was just kind of like we had had a nice, what I thought a good conversation...we had had a meal together...and then we talked about this movie and came back to watch it.

Did you ask him to put his head in your lap? - no

Did he put his head in your lap? - no

Did he ask you if he could put his head in your lap? - no

Let's go back to the meeting in your office. Describe again what happened, where you were sitting...where was...

I always have two chairs - I was sitting in the one next to the window...we started out having a conversation. His father is an extreme fundamentalist...he belongs to a Methodist Church here in town and he had done a fear workshop and centering prayer workshop with me. He struck me as a lonely person who was trying to break out of this.

The mistake I made is... normally my practice is never to see anyone outside Assisi Heights.

He was getting um - well he said, I want to pray, I want to pray...and he turned his chair facing me and took my hands. We held hands and prayed.

Did you kiss his hands? - no

How about his fingers? - no

How about him? - did he kiss your fingers? - not that I recall.

He was getting very, very upset and getting some anxiety and really sobbing.

What, if anything, did you touch?

What do you mean?

Did you touch him in any way?

Well, he was sobbing and we embraced.

So it was a hug? - yes

Did you move your hands down his back, to his shoulders or to his belt line or buttocks?

No. Like I said - it was very emotional. He was crying and just leaned into me. I told him to lay down here.

Where was he laying down?

I have a meditation place and let him lay down there.

Did you lay down next to him?

No. I was kind of kneeling.

Then I anointed him.

Did you use oil?

Yea

Kneeling down next to him? (Shook his head indicating yes).

You spoke about having an 'embrace' earlier. Can you describe that again?

It as a clear embrace.

Did you remember during an embrace touching his face?

JK000015

JK

His face? (Jack asked with confusion). (*Fr. Hoepfner indicated with the back of his hand down the side of his own face a motion of stroking the face.*)

Jack said he did not recall that.

He was invited to continue...

Eventually he started feeling better - he even said, I just feel much better. So he sat up and we talked a little bit more and then I, well, it was getting near dinner time and so we went to eat.

Did he tell you that he was not comfortable?

He never told me at any time that he was uncomfortable. In fact, he thanked me for ministering to him.

Let me clarify again, when you were praying and holding hands did you kiss his hands or he yours?...I don't recall that, no.

Did you say something to the effect, "This is a safe place...you don't need to worry. Here you are safe"? I have no recollection of saying this is a safe place -

Did you have a conversation about trust?

No conversation about trust.

When you spoke with about Jesus, did you get close to him?

Yes, I suppose I was pretty close.

What, about five inches from his face?

I suppose I could have been. Even when I work with the sisters I say to them... I want you to hear Christ speaking to you - I must have been that close - I remember him saying to me, I could feel your breath.

I don't understand all this...(*Fr. Jack was troubled at this point and visibly emotional*).

He was in so much pain, he was so - he seemed like such a searcher...he was looking for God. He had been so injured by his relationship with his father, I just felt so sad for him.

Did you invite him to be friends?

My rule of thumb is that I don't initiate anything. I would not send an e-mail to him - I would not call him, never have...he wrote me, he asked to talk to me.

Have you met with other people in your office?

Yes.

Who have these people been?

People I've met through workshops

Do you have similar talks with others?

Usually we just talk -

When meeting with him...I said that we were going to talk.

I can only guess with the news and this kind of stuff in the media, I guess he might second guess my intentions. I did not - this is about the last thing - I thought I had helped him out. I admit he was a nice guy that I liked being around. But, he told about his girlfriend...and some things like that. He was attending a workshop about Fear - I gave him my brochure about centering prayer and he wanted to find out more. That's what precipitated this long e-mail from him to begin with.

JK000016

JK

Did you feel that he was in need of professional help?

I happen to know that my therapist, _____ was his therapist. I brought it up at my last session - he said he remembered him and that he was immature. I asked him if he was getting help...

Did you have a conversation with _____ about _____

I asked him and he said he had seen him.

What I felt good about was that I thought I kept some pretty good boundaries.

Do you remember holding his head up while he was laying on the floor? I could have been, I don't recall exactly.

You were with him for how long? Must have come - uh...well, maybe six hours. Maybe five...we met, we went out and had dinner...then the movie -

How long at the office? - about an hour in the office.

Reading from the actual complaint, Fr. Hoepfner asked if there was truth to the statements -
He made further inappropriate invitations to me...

No. I knew from our conversation that he was dating someone - that he was straight...not that I'm looking for someone but why would I put the make on someone that I knew was straight. He talked about his girlfriend. Why would I jeopardize everything. I thought we had a good talk and that I had helped him deal with some things.

Did you ever use the term 'sugar daddy'?

Yes. When the bill came, I drew out my wallet and he said he wanted to pay for the meal. I said that I'd be the sugar daddy.

Jack, while _____ was on the floor or in your presence, were you ever aroused?

No - definitely not, I know this because first, I wasn't and also, I'm on medication that makes that difficult - very hard in fact. All the effects...you know I'd like to cry...right now I would be crying but the medication makes it almost impossible.

I will read the accusation that came to our office. Fr. Hoepfner read the entire letter.

How do you feel about hearing this?

I'm absolutely shocked - I'm absolutely so disappointed in myself...in ah— ***(At this time Fr. Jack described the many people he knew he let down...)*** ...my sisters...my friends, you, bishop... I know this really looks bad and with my past, I know that some may not believe me.

Do you see a boundary issue, Jack...yep...

The boundary issues is that I didn't keep it in my office and I didn't keep it on the chair...

From there...it becomes a matter of interpretation...He was crying, hyperventilating... I mean I like the guy - he was a pleasant fun guy I wanted to help - he was in so much pain and I really wanted to help.

I guess I enjoyed spending the time with somebody. But I - I just kind of came back and told
- you know I had an enjoyable evening and it was nice.

JK000017

JK

What's your reaction to this whole thing Jack?

I would not knowingly - willingly.. jeopardize my work with the sisters. I am angry with myself but I'm - I don't know why he's doing this. I tried to help him - I only want to do one thing in my life and I'm doing it...and...just absolutely devastated. Because of my past - I have no - very limited credibility, and I know that. Because of what has been going on in the church today - I'm afraid that I'm destroyed but I had to say to you all... that I have avoided anything - tried to avoid anything that would jeopardize what I'm doing. I can't believe that he's doing this to me. I don't know why. I have no secrets...I didn't do anything wrong...I don't understand.

What would you acknowledge is truthfulness in his letter?

Can I see the letter?

Second paragraph is true - I agreed to see him.

We arranged to meet

Did not touch his bottom - did not kiss his neck.

I would disagree with the touching.

Very often - even when I work with the sisters I say, "What is Jesus saying to you?"

That is true...I did do that.

When you said you had no secrets, Jack - when you related before that you came home and told how much you enjoyed the evening...did you tell him that you had comforted this man and lay him on the floor of your office?

No, no I didn't.

If you felt that was appropriate - there were no secrets - why didn't you share it?

It wasn't appropriate.

So you spoke before about the boundaries you felt you did not consider. One was inviting someone you had seen in your office to your home? Yes.

The other as moving from the chair to the floor? Yes, I acknowledge that it was poor judgement.

Did you meet with at any other time?

Earlier, yes. He had been in my office to pick up a brochure...but that had been a few minutes before the other workshop.

Bishop and Fr. Hoepfner told Fr. Jack that in light of our current instruction and adhering to our own document, he would be put on administrative leave until the investigation was complete. He understood this and was given a chance to express his own personal grief. He was obviously distraught and promised Bishop that he would not hard himself. Our team arranged for him to speak with as a friend and advocate and discussed our awareness of his pain. We prayed together and told him we would continue to keep him informed of progress.

Submitted to file,

Ms. P.J. Thompson
Diocesan Sexual Misconduct Team

JK000018

JK

Interview @ Victims Services Office

Advocate -

Follow-up to written allegation of sexual misconduct against Fr. Jack Krough

Interviewers: Rev. Michael Hoepfner

Ms. P.J. Thompson

Alleged victim:

Following brief introductions, Fr. Hoepfner asked if he could describe, in detail, what happened...

I've told this to...well, as little as I can anyway, to people that I trust...

I've told my girlfriend my mom and mom at the same time and a mentor in my church....with whom I pray...my pastor but not going into anything.

After that I wanted to record it while it was fresh so I wouldn't forget anything.

I have recorded a CD....a spoken CD because I am kind of - well, I think of things and then say them and tend to say a lot.

Can you tell us what happened?

I met Fr. Jack at a workshop called "Facing Fear" or something like that. It was a Saturday program. When I get to these kind of things I often latch on to someone who can be a mentor to me. I sort of grabbed Fr. Jack and we talked...I had an opportunity to sit with him and talk over lunch...you know, about a lot of things...things I thought were good for me and questions about other ways to understand what I was going through.

He then taught me centering prayer at a later break...and said that there was a workshop on this but even though it was already started...He invited me to the last one - the workshop on Centering prayer. That's when I first met him.

...and you know he is such a nice guy. I really felt like we connected.

I talked to him I guess - went to him initially in March.

I e-mailed him a few days after that Tuesday. (E-mail copies provided to read. Requested copies to place in the file - advocate made copies and gave to Fr. Hoepfner.)

I've been working on a lot of spiritual stuff and delving into some personal things. Lately, I've felt a real darkness and Jack - he reminded me of because his books have been helpful to me...I guess I felt like we could connect. So, um - well, I ...

I wrote this long two page letter and asked him if I could take him up on an offer to see him.

He responded giving me his personal number. He told me that he was really concerned - um he said, concerned about this depression you're describing.

When do you have time?

I said the sooner the better because I was flexible...because in my work - I'm self employed right now I can set my own hours...so we scheduled a meeting for 4:00 p.m.

JK000019

JK

Did you check in with the receptionist or did Father meet you?

I arrived at 4:00 and the receptionist asked if I was there with a group...I said "No"...(advocate reminded him that he had told the receptionist he was there to see Fr. Jack). Oh yes, I said I was there to see Fr. Jack and she said she knew he was expecting someone. I didn't check in or anything though. So, when we got to his office he asked if I felt safe here...he showed me the chairs and told me about all the peace surrounding me - pointed at the window the chairs...

He asked me to describe some of my struggles - I was in a really dark place in my life.

This time I was very - my girlfriend is in _____ and she's just not sure where we're going.

I was describing some of this - I do remember at one point an image I had two mornings before.

I described this image of Jesus holding me and me crying on his shoulder. I spoke of an understanding that there was an epiphany that God was going to have to deal with me...it can't be a head game....my dad is very logical and heady - I needed to feel it and express it here (pointing to his heart)...I need to understand at a level that transcends logic.

I talked about being able to cry. Then I did - I mean I just crumbled...and he (Fr. Jack) came to me and hugged me and said something about "you don't have to cry, you don't ever have to cry alone." While hugging me he touched my shoulders, my back and right down to my belt (indicated the upper part of the buttocks with his hands).

Then he sat down and I sat down.

He moved to my left side and then placed his hands on my chest.

He put his arms around my waist and hugged me as I sobbed...sometimes uncontrollably I just sobbed. I cried a lot - I don't know...I can't remember the exact order of things I guess, well,

I remember at one point he got down on one knee

then he brushed his lips across my neck.

I was sobbing and out of control...just sobbing. I think he said we're going to do something different...

He told me to lie down - moved the cushions...he lay next to me and put his arms around me and I around him.

He said, "We are Christ to one another."

All these things that he was saying were getting at what I've been dealing with...

I was confused - I wanted to be changed or healed. He asked me if I was O.K.

You know - Fr. Jack, well - the Saturday we first met he talked about the lover God. He told me that God is crazy in love with you. He related a story of a priest in Ecuador who said God loves you very, very much because he loves me very, very much. (He used a voice with an accent to indicate his conversation).

So, anyway - um, I know what happened -

he started saying this is no longer Fr. Jack speaking but think of it as Jesus speaking...it's Jesus speaking now.

He rubbed his hands on my abdomen and down to my belt...and I knew where his hand was going and redirected it. His hand moved across my penis and he put his hand on my thigh, my upper leg. I was still very distraught...still sobbing sometimes.

We were getting into all this stuff that I was dealing with...and I was confused, I remember he said, I'm going to pray with you and he put his hand on my heart.

I thought things were getting kind of weird...I kind of (he indicated a flinching motion or a backing away) and he seemed to change. He asked if I was o.K.

JK000020

JK

Did you tell Fr. Jack you were uncomfortable? No...I guess I was confused - I didn't want to think that I wasn't open to the healing...but then,

He did a blessing

using anointing oil and blessed my eyes to see love...

Blessed my ears to hear love...my hands to be love...then he said really softly, almost gently -

Then he blessed my heart...with his hand on my chest...

Will you follow me?

Will you be led to Calvary?

When I would deeply sob I would grab him and we would hold each other and I would respond.

Can you clarify 'respond' for me?

I would cry in the crook of his neck - I've been feeling very alone and missing touch.

In the state I was in I had taken all guards down - so yes, I pulled in.

I said, I love you God, I love you Jesus, I love you Fr. Jack.

He was right there - his mouth was so close to mine and so I focused on the words of Jesus because I really thought he was going to kiss me right then.

And did he kiss you right then?

No. Intuitively, I think I thought if I showed I enjoyed this, he might have carried things further.

I didn't look at him very often - I wouldn't look into his eyes...I was just trying to understand some type of boundary...his eyes looked so caring and gentle.

He asked me at least twice if I was o.K. - he did ask me but I think I had made myself very vulnerable.

I know afterwards when we got up into our chairs...he asked if I was o.K. again.

He asked me what I remembered...I thought that was very strange and I just related a few things that I remembered. I said I felt like a bride and I remembered his blessing my parts of my body like I said. I remembered him reading the poem of St. John of the Cross - we talked for a little while.

He said "you look like you need to pray"...

I turned to him...crossed my hands

He looked at me as a lover would, so gentle and he said that I would pray...he would follow.

He started kissing my fingers...

I felt very close and I kissed his fingers after that while we were still praying.

We ended prayer and we talked about another book that he suggested I could read.

Before...in his e-mail -

well back up, um he mentioned that we could get a bite to eat then. Maybe that was a way he thought we could return things to normal or something. So we went...I said, I want to pay.

Because I know normally that for spiritual direction you pay. So, we went to his car and went over to Billotti's - he said he has some original Ansel Adams and that maybe he would show me those sometime. I told him I didn't want to go to a specific restaurant because someone had hit on me. He told me not to worry because he was a "Sugar Daddy"... (using a different voice to imitate) so I was a little uncomfortable about that.

After we ate he asked about seeing a psychologist and I told him I sawhe told me he was seeing the same person. I guess in thinking about all this I don't think it would be good to go back if he sees the same doctor.

Fr. Jack said, I think we're becoming friends - he said, but there's a boundary I don't usually

JK000021

JK

cross if I'm counseling someone. I was very excited about having someone to share all this with -especially someone who reminds me of When I got home - I wanted to say it was o.K. I was so confused and told myself that it must be o.K. but something didn't feel right...that's why I called my girlfriend...

I remember also in the moment when we were going to Billotti's saying we could go biking together. He said he used to have a lot of bikes but he doesn't any more. Ya know, that Sunday I wrote a letter...that I, well...first

I went to his house and showed me all his things and icons and stuff and - a teacher at Lourdes High School came in and he showed him the icons too. He talked about his obsessive compulsive behaviors and when he gets into something he really gets into it. He talked about how he had a darkroom once and now a digital camera and then showed me his sound stereo system. He had a big huge system and said he thought about letting go of it..... but really liked movies. We had talked about seeing a movie.

He mentioned that I didn't need to cry alone - he said he would hold me. He said make yourself comfortable - put your head on my lap - I asked if I could put my feet on the couch...I crossed my feet and maintained a stance of my knees up - it was all very confusing.

The movie he chose to watch was Billie Elliot - plot of a strong 7 year old who's becoming aware of his homosexuality - just the feelings I got about this boy who's becoming a homosexual were - well, I don't feel it was appropriate. During the show when the little girl would tickle him with a feather or something, Fr. Jack would say, "fem fatal" -

I felt pushed a bit along with the suggestion of my head in his lap with this stuff.

When the movie was over I pretty much went to leave. He said, Well, we never got into centering prayer...but we can get to that another time.

Not too long afterward I called my girlfriend...I said I'm kind of afraid to tell you this, (I guess cuz I wanted it to be o.K.) But I told her the things that happened. She said it wasn't appropriate.

Sunday I was kinda out of it and was down and felt really alone at church.

I'm trying to start a group...of..(?)

I was calling people madly so that I could talk to them about it...

I called my prayer mentor but didn't reach him and I wanted to call pastor but he just happened to walk in while I was sitting there. While he was getting his things, he stepped around me and didn't want to disturb me I think...I said I needed to talk and just started getting real emotional.

He listened while I talked to him - I didn't give a lot of details about it - but, I wasn't the one who should have worried about boundaries. I was sobbing and sobbing.

I think it was before that - I wrote a letter to Fr. Jack...I said I didn't think you could be Fr. Jack and Jack at the same time. Many people have told me that it was inappropriate and after explaining this I think that's right.

While I was at his apartment he said "It took a great deal of trust on both parts."

Oh - I wanted to say too that when he said, Lets do guided centering prayer...he said

Now relax and began to take your word up on your breath.

When distractions come - focus on breath....I remember that - he was chewing gum and I could feel his breath.

JK000022

JK

What kind of an outcome have you envisioned since this occurred?

I don't think it's very good for him to be in a position where people can automatically trust him and where people can take down all boundaries...and this happens. I believe he needs to know that when you invite yourself to be guided...when a person takes that step and he does something inappropriate...you lay aside your judgement ability. I don't think it's appropriate.

I don't know what he'll say - if he'll deny it or what - but even that, regardless of his motivation.

If he thought he was doing the best for me he really needs to be redirected.

If he was being predatory - which the way he set it up as being safe and afterwards saying it took a great deal of trust...he may say that so I'm the fall guy...but no - I...well, I just think it's inappropriate and he shouldn't be able to counsel people.

Will Assisi Heights know this or should we be - um, how are they aware?

Assisi Heights wants to have a priest minister there...there's an arrangement that a priest is assigned there. He is a diocesan priest. Assisi Heights is a community of religious women.

Well, (pointing to) we had spoken about a few things before as well.

We talked about different options.

The book referred to treatment and help ...

My first thinking maybe was that he is misguided - I don't see how that could really be but, I would like - transformation. You know transformation can never be imposed from the outside...I want to leave it to you, to the diocese - to use your wisdom to give him whatever opportunities to grow...transformation in a good sense...you know.

I also - not withstanding don't think he should be in this position.

(Advocate asked...)

Have you contacted an attorney about this? ***We will contact our diocesan attorney.***

Is that someone local? ***Yes, right here in Rochester, Mr. George Restovich.***

I just think it's important that help is received through, not just any local psychologist but someone who understands this issue, is specialized around this issue...do your sources deal with this issue or others like alcoholism...

In our work around this issue we deal with specific places that are nationally recognized in dealing with these types of issues when clergy or religious are involved. They handle a gamut of issues from alcohol and drug abuse to sexual issues too.

We thanked the advocate for serving and for his statement. Fr. Hoepfner said he was sorry for the pain was going through and wanted him to hear that on behalf of the Church.

Our meeting closed with the affirmation that we would continue the investigation and honor request to make additional contacts through his advocate

Submitted to file,

P.J. Thompson
Diocesan Sexual Misconduct Team

JK000023

JK

Final Draft for the body of my Continuing Care Contract—Jack Krough

Preamble

My recovery program is now integral to my Christian pilgrimage. Because the past and the future always lie beyond my reach, I will seek to mindfully live my recovery today, each day of my life. This contract expresses my commitment to the work of recovery and my need to develop a life and habits that support this commitment. The terms of the contract are as follows:

Psychosexual Addiction

I will maintain my bottom line of abstinence from any sexual behavior that is contrary to my vow of priestly celibacy.

I will attend 2-4 12 Step meetings each week: SLAA, SCA, SAA and SA.

I will continue to monitor my sexual attractions, feelings, actions, and coping methods toward adolescent and adult men with my 12 Step sponsor, therapists, and support team on a weekly basis.

I will not develop intimate friendships nor minister one-to one with adolescent minors.

I will not minister to vulnerable men on a one-to-one basis.

I will report relapse activity and behavior to my continuing care therapist, out-patient therapist and support team.

I will develop no friendships that are a secret from the members of my support team.

I will strive to set and maintain healthy boundaries in my professional and personal relations that are appropriate for a Catholic priest.

Emotional Health

I will continue individual therapy on a once a week basis or as recommended by my individual therapist and continuing care therapist.

I will continue small group therapy on a regular basis as recommended by my individual therapist and continuing care therapist.

I will work only 25-30 hours per week during the first six months following my release from St Luke Institute, after which I will review this agreement with my continuing care therapist and support team.

JK000024

JK

I will take a regular day off each week, vacation, and other recreational opportunities and will be accountable to my support team for the beneficial use of this time.

I will discuss my feelings of anger, shame, fear, anxiety, loneliness, alienation, rejection and other feelings with my therapist, support team, small group, and 12 step sponsor.

I will express anger, frustration, disappointment, and disagreement directly to the person or people involved and avoid patterns of triangulation or "stuffing" my feelings.

I will express my needs and wants to others and will be appropriately assertive as the need arises.

I will present and discuss issues of intimacy, relationships and friendships with members of my support group, inviting feedback and challenges that they may offer.

I will attend all diocesan, presbytery, and deanery meetings required of diocesan priests.

I will attend at least one social event each month with other priests of the diocese.

I will attend family gatherings and maintain regular contact with my parents and my sisters.

I will work with a financial planner to develop a program to repay my financial debts and develop a budget.

I will consult a member of my support team before making any purchase of over fifty dollars.

I will continue to study and practice mindfulness through reading and meditation.

I will daily remember "Sayings remain meaningless until they are embodied in habits."

Physical Health

I will exercise a minimum of three days a week.

I will seek medical and dental care as needed.

I will monitor my depression and will return to the use of the anti-depressant Effexor if recommended by medical authorities.

I will monitor my sleep and diet.

I will get a weekly massage to reduce stress and enhance relaxation.

JK000025

JK

Spiritual Health

I will find a new spiritual director and meet with him on a regular basis.

I will attend a diocesan priest retreat and, additionally, make a private retreat of at least three days annually.

I will continue to pray the Liturgy of the Hours daily.

I will continue to meditate twice a day for thirty minutes.

I will continue daily spiritual reading.

Continuing Care

I will have a support team of six persons minimum with whom I will share this contract and my budding signs.

I will host a re-entry workshop within eight weeks of assuming an assignment.

I will maintain regular weekly contact with my continuing care therapist until this re-entry workshop takes place and as needed thereafter.

I will return to St Luke Institute for eight Continuing Care Workshops. The first six will be semi-annual; the final two will be annual.

Prior to attending the workshops, I will receive from my continuing care therapist a packet which will include form letters requesting feedback regarding my progress in recovery. I will distribute these letters to my support team, appropriate superiors, and others as necessary. I will ask that these letters be completed and returned to my continuing care therapist prior to the workshop.

Accountability:

I will be accountable to the Diocesan Administrator, the next Bishop of Winona when he is named, my continuing care therapist, my out patient therapist, my support group, sponsor and other significant persons.

I will be accountable to God.

I will be accountable to myself.

When in doubt I will call my continuing care therapist at St Luke Institute.

Budding Signs
Jack L. Krough

Sayings remain meaningless until they are embodied in habits.

—Kahlil Gibran

Eliminate something superfluous from your life. Break a habit. Do something that makes you feel insecure. Carry out an action with complete attention and intensity.

—Piero Ferrucci

When an ordinary man attains knowledge, he is a sage; when a sage attains understanding, he is an ordinary man.—Zen saying

Budding Signs are clearly observable attitudes and behaviors that indicate that something is going wrong in my recovery and that I may be moving toward a slip from sobriety. When I become aware of this I need to contact my support group, therapist, or sponsor as soon as possible to determine what is going on in my life to cause them.

I am in danger of relapse when...

- ⇒ I am **Hungry, Angry, Lonely, Tired.**
- ⇒ I do not meditate for 2-30 minute periods a day.
- ⇒ I do not regularly pray the Liturgy of the Hours.
- ⇒ I do not regularly visit my spiritual director.
- ⇒ I do not regularly receive the Sacrament of Reconciliation.
- ⇒ I do not maintain a program of regular spiritual reading.
- ⇒ I do not attend 12 Step meetings each week.
- ⇒ I do not share my sexual feeling, actions, and coping methods with my sponsor, therapists, or members of my support group.
- ⇒ I experience feelings of jealousy in my relationships.
- ⇒ I place myself in situations with minors which may lead to establishing unhealthy relationships with them.
- ⇒ I want to include minors in my personal social life.
- ⇒ I want to minister one-on-one to a man with AIDS.

JK

- ⇒ I want to keep any friendship or relationship secret from my sponsor, therapist, spiritual director and support group.
- ⇒ I want an exclusive friendship with a person.
- ⇒ I isolate myself from priests, parishioners, coworkers and friends.
- ⇒ I stop attending individual and small group therapy without the prior approval of my out-patient and continuing care therapists.
- ⇒ I fail to regularly receive a therapeutic massage.
- ⇒ I work over thirty hours a week.
- ⇒ I fail to take a regular day off and fail to use that day in a re-creative way.
- ⇒ I feel inferior, unworthy, abandoned or rejected.
- ⇒ I hold onto anger, fear, shame and resentments instead of confronting the feelings and resolving them with the appropriate person.
- ⇒ I take feedback as criticism.
- ⇒ I triangulate instead of resolving differences directly.
- ⇒ I do not express my wants and needs directly and without apology.
- ⇒ I do not discuss issues of intimacy, relationships, and friendships with members of my support team and welcome their feedback and challenges.
- ⇒ I excuse myself from diocesan, presbytery, deanery, and parish meetings without discussing my reasons and accepting the challenge of my therapist, sponsor, coworkers, or support group.
- ⇒ I decline invitations to attend priests' social gatherings without discussing my reasons and accepting the challenge of my therapist, sponsor, or support group.
- ⇒ I decline invitations to attend family gatherings without discussing my reasons and accepting the challenge of my therapist, sponsor, or support group.
- ⇒ I do not maintain regular contact with friends in person or by e-mail or telephone.
- ⇒ I procrastinate on reading personal mail.
- ⇒ I procrastinate answering personal mail and e-mail and returning phone calls.
- ⇒ I subscribe to more than five periodicals.

JK

- ⇒ I break my financial budget.
- ⇒ I do not exercise.
- ⇒ I do not seek a therapeutic and, if recommended, a pharmacological solution to extended periods of deep depression.

I ask my Support Group to challenge me when...

- ⇒ I do not respond directly to feedback you have shared with me.
- ⇒ I do not verbally acknowledge that I have heard your words of support and encouragement.
- ⇒ A situation or relationship should produce an emotional response but I appear to be emotionally flat and intellectualizing.
- ⇒ My body language contrasts with my words, e.g. I look angry, but speak in a calm, detached manner.
- ⇒ The anger I express seems too intense for the provoking incident.
- ⇒ I am complaining, but have not taken any positive steps to resolve my complaint.
- ⇒ I seem elusive about where or with whom I have been.
- ⇒ I am talking about one person more than seems normal on several occasions.
- ⇒ I am silent about what I am exploring in therapy.
- ⇒ I am not excited about the books I am reading or the movies I have seen.
- ⇒ I am not writing poetry or working in some other medium of art.
- ⇒ I become totally focused on a new interest or hobby unrelated to my established interests.
- ⇒ I am making purchases of over fifty dollars.
- ⇒ I am not speaking to you on a regular basis.

JK

PJ Thompson

To:

Subject: reply

Hi! Thanks for keeping in touch. We have been hosting our Bishop's "Ministry Days" since Saturday and completed them today. We had great attendance and it is always wonderful to see the ministries that are supporting the Church. Thus, I have been out of the office until now.

I wanted you to know that indeed Fr. J. did report to St. Luke's Institute on the 10th of June and the counseling team there received a report from Fr. Hoepfner. His report was given to them both verbally and via faxed information reviewing the original accusation and an account of our meetings with you and . His subsequent treatment sessions and follow-up report will be confidential and sent to our bishop. However, as we indicated during our meeting with you, we have already put follow-up steps on the calendar and have appointments with Fr. J. upon return as well as continuing care considerations.

You asked about 'knowledge' of this accusation at . The administrative leadership team there was informed of the allegation and our follow-up to the matter. They were not given access to the detailed investigation reports but were told of the nature of the allegation. The general population there was then informed (by this same administrative team) through a general announcement, that he was put on indefinite leave by the bishop.

The policy step which refers to consideration of informing previous parishes is always a consideration if the circumstances warrant. We did review his pastoral role at his last assignment and acted accordingly.

Again, we so appreciate your commitment to helping in the healing process for victims and your questions regarding our process. It is helpful to us to continue to evaluate our steps to ensure that we are providing the best possible help to all concerned.

I believe that Fr. J. will receive the help he needs and I pray the will continue to have support from his family and friends. Please know that our bishop and the team members do keep him in our prayers.

Blessings,

Pj Thompson

Director of Human Resources

Diocesan Sexual Misconduct Team Member

June 25, 2002

Rev. Jack Krough

Rochester, MN 55901-1744

Dear Father Krough:

Thank you for the opportunity of meeting with you this past week to discuss your future. In spite of the events of the past few weeks, I hope that the visit to St. Luke's have been beneficial for you.

As I discussed with you, in accord with the directions from the Charter for the Protection of Children and Young People of the United States Catholic Conference of Bishops, I hereby notify you that:

1. You are removed from all priestly ministry.
2. You are not to present yourself in public as a priest; you will not wear clerical attire.
3. Although you are not to celebrate Mass publicly, permission is granted for you to say a private Mass in your residence or your chapel.

Jack, we talked about three possibilities for your future:

1. Requesting the dispensation from the obligations of the priestly state (laicization)
2. Retirement with a disability pension from the Pension Fund, with the above prescriptions in place.
3. Looking into residence at a monastery to pursue a life of solitude, prayer and penance, with the above prescriptions in place..

I hope that you take the time during the next four weeks to seriously consider these alternatives. When we meet on August 1, 2002, we can finalize a decision. I hope that you will give serious consideration to the proposal of laicization.

I ask that you move out of St. Pius Rectory and take up a residence that is not connected with a parish or church institution. I ask that this be accomplished by August 1, 2002, or at the latest, before school starts on August 26, 2002.

I know that this is a most painful time in your life. I know too that often, through suffering and pain, comes a special call to holiness and opportunities for new life. God has blessed you with some great gifts and, hopefully, we can find a way for you to share these gifts with God's people despite your new limitations regarding priesthood.

I look forward to our August 1st meeting. I will certainly keep you in my prayers.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington
Bishop of Winona.

JK000416

JK

June 25, 2002

Rev. Jack Krough

Rochester, MN 55901-1744

Dear Father Krough:

Thank you for the opportunity of meeting with you this past week to discuss your future. In spite of the events of the past few weeks, I hope that the visit to St. Luke's have been beneficial for you.

As I discussed with you, in accord with the directions from the Charter for the Protection of Children and Young People of the United States Catholic Conference of Bishops, I hereby notify you that:

1. You are removed from all priestly ministry.
2. You are not to present yourself in public as a priest; you will not wear clerical attire.
3. Although you are not to celebrate Mass publicly, permission is granted for you to say a private Mass in your residence or your chapel.

Jack, we talked about three possibilities for your future:

1. Requesting the dispensation from the obligations of the priestly state (laicization)
2. Retirement with a disability pension from the Pension Fund, with the above prescriptions in place.
3. Looking into residence at a monastery to pursue a life of solitude, prayer and penance, with the above prescriptions in place..

I hope that you take the time during the next four weeks to seriously consider these alternatives. When we meet on August 1, 2002, we can finalize a decision. I hope that you will give serious consideration to the proposal of laicization.

I ask that you move out of St. Pius Rectory and take up a residence that is not connected with a parish or church institution. I ask that this be accomplished by August 1, 2002, or at the latest, before school starts on August 26, 2002.

I know that this is a most painful time in your life. I know too that often, through suffering and pain, comes a special call to holiness and opportunities for new life. God has blessed you with some great gifts and, hopefully, we can find a way for you to share these gifts with God's people despite your new limitations regarding priesthood.

I look forward to our August 1st meeting. I will certainly keep you in my prayers.

Sincerely yours in Christ,

Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington
Bishop of Winona.

JK000361

CONFIDENTIAL

October 1, 2002

Jack Krough

Dear Jack:

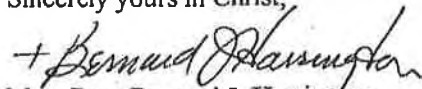
I hope these first days of fall find you well and enjoying the beauty of God's creative touch.

At the last Priests' Pension Board meeting, September 12, 2002, the Board unanimously approved a full pension for you, in accord with the policies of the Pension Plan regarding priests disabled and/or unable to minister. They took this action at my request, in light of the Charter for the Protection of Children and Young Adults and your current situation. Their action allows you to receive from the Pension Fund a full monthly benefit. The benefit now stands at \$1300.00 per month.

The Board approved this payment to you beginning August 1, 2002. Consequently, you recently received in the mail a check from the Fund for August and September. The Priests' Pension Fund is also now paying your health care premium. If you are ever employed or in a position where you receive health care benefits, please notify us so that we may drop you from our health care coverage so that there is no double coverage. I understand that you also recently received, through automatic deposit, salary and benefits compensation for the month of September. Please be aware that this was the last such deposit. From now on, as long as your status remains as it is, the money you receive each month will be your disability pension benefit from the Priests' Pension Fund. Of course, if you are ever in serious need of financial assistance, please let me know.

Jack, I look forward to meeting with you on October 29, 2002, and hearing from you how you are doing. Until then, I remain...

Sincerely yours in Christ,



Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington
Bishop of Winona

CONFIDENTIAL MEMO

TO: Rev. Michael Hoepfner

FROM: ✕ Bernard J. Harrington *BHJ*

DATE: July 1, 2003

RE: Jack Krough

I contacted Jack Krough on Tuesday, July 1, 2003. He lives with

Jack seemed very calm and was talkative. He spends most of his time writing. He already has 150 pages done on a book on suffering and contemplation. Actually, he is finding writing to be enjoyable.

He has finished his five years of aftercare with St. Luke Institute. He has little contact with any of the local AA or support groups. On occasion, when going up to the Twin Cities, he does go to an AA meeting.

He does have contact with his priest support group located in Southeastern Minnesota.

His social contacts are quite limited. At the present time, he seems to be doing quite well. He appreciated my telephone call.



Saint Luke Institute

St. Luke Continuing Care Program

The program is designed to assist the patient in transitioning from treatment to post-treatment and to help them in maintaining their recovery.

Prior to the patient's discharge from treatment he/she prepares a continuing care contract with the assistance of the patient's primary therapist.

This contract outlines the patient's plan for their continued recovery. Areas covered in the plan typically address problems that have been focused on and identified during treatment - especially addictive behavior or other problematic behavior.

In addition, the patient usually prepares a list of "budding signs or bussing signs". These are behaviors that the patient has identified as precursors to relapse.

After discharge the patient is asked to form a support group to assist him/her in recovery. This group is usually composed of 6 to 8 individuals that have regular contact with the patient. This is not a therapy group, but a group of individuals who offer support and honest feedback to the patient. One of the main tasks of the group is to "observe and share" with the patient behaviors that they believe are problematic to the patient's recovery. Consequently, it is crucial that the support group members understand the patient's "budding or bussing signs"

We suggest that the group be composed of individuals who interact with the patient in a variety of relationships and roles. Thus, the group should not just be a group of the patients' close friends, but should include such individuals as a religious superior or representative, a co-worker or peer, and a 12-step sponsor. The key factor in selecting members should be the ability of an individual to offer honest feedback and support to the patient.

Within about 8 weeks after the patient has begun his new assignment or ministry a therapist from Continuing Care Services facilitates a re-entry workshop. This workshop takes place in the patient's diocese or religious community. The patient is asked to convene a meeting of his support group. This meeting (workshop) usually takes from 2 to 3 hours. the patient shares his story, the continuing care contract, and his "budding or bussing signs" with the group. The workshop also includes a brief didactic component regarding treatment and addictions.

JK

Prior to the re-entry workshop the patient is asked to contact his or her continuing care therapist weekly by phone.

Typically, patients are also asked to participate in a number of Continuing Care Workshops. These are held at St. Luke Institute. Usually a patient attends a workshop every six months for three years and then an annual workshop for the following two years. The number of workshops is determined through consultation with the patient, the religious superior, and the primary therapist.

JK000033

MONTHLY REPORT TO BISHOP

This self-reporting mechanism shall include:

- A regular Monthly Report completed by the priest at the request of the Bishop, submitted to the Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator.
- Periodic meetings to be held by telephone conference with the Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator for review of the submitted Monthly Report.
- Two meetings annually with the bishop or his delegate.

Name: Jack Krough

Date of Report: 12 Jan 05

Ongoing Formation and Pastoral Care

- a. After-care Plan/Follow-up Plan or Personal Plan Write a brief summary of how you follow a daily plan for healthy living. If you are not following a plan, explain why? What are your plans to fulfill the incomplete components of your plan?

There are six components in my plan

- * Prayer, including daily mass, Liturgy of the Hours, Centering Prayer and spiritual reading.
- * Work. I spend a minimum of six hours working on my current writing project.
- * Exercise. I walk the dog and work on projects around the house and yard.
- * Recovery. I attend an SCA meeting weekly and participate in an online SLAA meeting weekly. I go to the Twin Cities monthly to attend SLAA and meet with my sponsor.
- * Social. Centers on family, but I get together with several other friends at least once a month.
- * Personal. Reading, movies, art projects.

*Meeting
 Pastoral Care*



- b. Health and Medication Follow-up Describe how you attend to your general health through regular check-ups and daily exercise. Please list any medications currently prescribed.

annual

- * I have an *annual* meeting with my psychiatrist this month.
- * Exercise daily
- * Currently take 150mg of Effexor and 50mg of Tragadone daily

(Handwritten initials)

- c. Spiritual Formation Describe how spiritual and pastoral living and formation are a part of your daily life.

It is the center of my life. I have a very specific routine of spiritual practices. The spiritual life is also central to my writing

Do you have and make regular use of spiritual direction?

Yes, once every two months.

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL
Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator
55 West Sanborn Street • Winona, Minnesota 55987

- d. Prayer Life Describe how you have kept the Eucharist the center of daily life.
I celebrate a private mass weekdays and attend a parish mass on Sundays.

Are you faithful daily to the Liturgy of the Hours? YES NO If not, why not?
It is the framework of my daily routine

How do you include personal prayer/contemplation into daily life?

*Centering Prayer twice a day.
Scripture and Spiritual Reading daily.
a period of intercessory prayer daily.*

Support Systems

Describe systems of support that you have in place and how you use them to continue to be healthy. Do you meet on a regular basis?

Support Groups -

While my formal support group has disbanded, I am in regular contact with the members as well as two new supportive friends: local Lutheran minister and a Catholic ecologist/writer that I talk with at least twice a month.

Counseling Services -

I am not in therapy, but review my progress and medications with my psychiatrist every year.

Sponsor(s) -

I have an SLAA sponsor in Minneapolis that I meet once a month and talk to by phone, usually twice a month.

Other - *I use three "readers" to evaluate my writing. Since my fiction is on spiritual themes, it is also a very personal discussion.*

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL
Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator
55 West Sanborn Street ▪ Winona, Minnesota 55987

Other Areas

Do you have access to the internet? YES NO.

If yes, how often and for how much time?

30 minutes a day for email, news, and project research.

Have you come across, or accessed yourself, any inappropriate or pornographic websites while using the internet? YES NO Please describe.

Are there any other areas in your life that pose problems for you? Please explain.

I am content to live a very quiet, private life. While my daily routine is very ~~fast~~ full, it is also very satisfying.

I respect your privacy. My intention is to help communicate with you clearly.

Contact with adolescents and young male adults

1. Have you been alone with an adolescent or young male adult since the last report?

YES and NO

If so, please describe the circumstances of each instance.

My nephew has just graduated High School. He and his friends come through the house, but I have little contact. I discourage it. Our house has 2 floors and a large addition. I live alone on the lower floor and my nephew does his occasional entertaining on the upper floor and in the addition.

2. Have you attempted to place yourself in situations in which you could socialize with adolescents or young male adults? YES NO

If so, please describe the circumstances of each instance.

JK

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL
Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator
55 West Sanborn Street ▪ Winona, Minnesota 55987

Domicile (Residency)

Please list your current address and contact information below for verification purposes.

Note: If you relocate or change contact information, please notify the Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator of the change immediately.

Street Address:

City, State, Zip Code:

Telephone:

Cellular Phone: *none*

Email Address:

Do you have a Quasi-domicile (ie: cabin) where you spend time away overnight?

YES NO If so, how often do you spend time at this location?

Have you spent time away overnight from your primary domicile or quasi-domicile?

YES NO Please explain.

I spent Saturday night at

home

*in Woodbury.
I will spend four days this week helping my parents and
day sitting for a vacation friend.*

Additional Comments/Questions Generally speaking, how are things going for you?

God has been very good to me. I feel blessed.

Please return in the enclosed self-addressed envelope within ten days of receipt.

JK000245

JK

PJ Thompson

From: PJ Thompson
Sent: Monday, June 27, 2005 3:33 PM
To:
Subject: RE: Report

Jack,
Thanks for the prayers...they are always a gift!
I assume the number you put on your form is a private one. I am intrigued about your writing and am grateful as well that you are flexible for some time for our talk. I will call on Wednesday, June 29th about 11:00 a.m. if that works out o.k. for you. If I don't hear back, I'll assume that a contact is fine. If you'd prefer a time later in the day or on another day, please let me know.
I also appreciate the invitation to visit. I may just take a drive and would certainly arrange it with you as to the best date. Perhaps we could review your most recent report and I could buy lunch. I look forward to speaking with you soon.

pj

From:
Sent: Monday, June 27, 2005 2:37 PM
To: PJ Thompson
Subject: Re: Report

Dear PJ

I am sorry to hear of your husband's health problem. I will hold him (and you) in prayer.

I am grateful for the supervision you will provide. I believe that my life of prayer and work offers me the opportunity to serve Christ and the Church of Winona. Accountability is important and I welcome it.

It will be easy to 'synch' my schedule with yours since I normally write Monday through Friday from nine until late afternoon. Whatever time and date works for you will probably work for me.

I think the bishop found it helpful to see where and how I live. Barron is approximately two hours from Winona. You are welcome to visit.

I look forward to talking with you,

Fraternally
jack

6/27/2005

JK000246

JK

PJ Thompson

To:

Subject: Report

Jack,

I was glad I had the opportunity to greet you at the door when you came for your meeting. I am sorry I was unable to meet with you on the same day regarding the monthly report. I received an urgent call that my husband was admitted to the hospital on the day you were here and I went to LaCrosse immediately. He is doing much better now following nearly a week in the hospital - even though he faces surgery soon.

Thank you very much for your promptness in returning the monthly report following your meeting with bishop. I have read through your responses and am appreciative of your openness to working with me. I had hoped we could set up a time that works well for you to speak personally with me on the telephone each month following the reports you send. If you could give me some options of dates and times that work for you - we could match our schedules. A verbal discussion via telephone is what has been requested by bishop. If at any time you wish to contact me through e-mail as well, please feel free to do so. I look forward to receiving some dates and times for July you could be available for a telephone follow-up with me. You can expect a report form to be mailed to you with a self-addressed envelope each month on the 15th.

Blessings,
PJ Thompson

6/27/2005

JK000247

**TELEPHONE CONTACT SUMMARY
MONTHLY REPORT**

Name: *Jack Krough*

PCA Coordinator: *PJ Thompson*

Date: June 29, 2005

Time: 11:00 – 11:40 a.m.

I expressed my appreciation to Jack for his thorough review and completion of the Monthly Report received on 15 June 2005. It was my intention to keep our follow-up call less clinical and more conversational regarding his daily routine, current interests, participation in groups and relationships. I found him to be both positive and realistic. He offered several reflections about himself.

Jack talked about his current writing project which he works with up to six hours a day. It has been encouraged by a number of individuals, including a Catholic editor and some individual mentors. The writing has been a way he feels he can reach out and minister within the borders of his circumstances. It seems to work well for him, as he is a very private man and doesn't have a problem with 'alone' time. He expressed the humbling experience of feeling elated about finishing his manuscript only to have it returned with notes and rejections from publishers. However, he continues to press forward and sees his writing as something that gives him purpose and enables him to daily discover more about what he knows intellectually but has also experienced personally.

Being in a family setting has been a new experience for Jack. He lives in the lower level of his sister and brother-in-laws home and helped them finish an addition to that space. He had a new learning about the need to balance the *give and take* when you're constantly living in shared space. He has been able to practice flexibility and appreciates the changes as well as some of the constants that come with family life. Though he expresses that he is by nature an introvert and living alone is something he felt he did well...family interaction has been a good growing for him. Though he sees differences in habits and routines, he finds that he can respect those differences and it has been a positive experience.

Jack is able to connect periodically with three of his priest friends from our diocese. He appreciates that connection after spending 26 years here. He is grateful for the opportunity to connect with me as a diocesan representative. He prays for the priests and people of our diocese and is interested in how things are here. It is important to him to maintain a very low profile in connection to the diocese, especially physically. He expressed his appreciation for the opportunity to continue to live in the situation that the bishop has approved. From time to time, he has been able to help friends who have experienced health set backs through visits or staying with them for a brief period to aid them with meals, medication, etc. Sometimes he has been able to help with pet sitting as well.

I confirmed the need to have a simple log of his attendance at SLAA meetings and other meetings for support. I will forward a form that might be beneficial which asks for the name of the group, the date of attendance and the initials of a fellow participant. He felt that the accountability forms and the monthly contacts were a positive feature of our relationship. It gives him a greater connection than one annual visit.

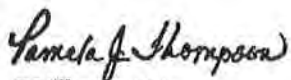
JK

I discussed the schedule for reports and the fact that I would be writing a follow-up from our monthly telephone contact. He will get a copy of my summary and a copy will be placed in the file.

We did not discuss internet access at length. However, I feel comfortable with his self-reporting of some e-mail, project research and news information at a limit of approx. 30 minutes daily. I do interface with Jack for follow-up details or appointments via the internet as well.

We discussed the use of the form as a starting point for conversation and follow-up. I will continue to review the form content and am open to input that might be helpful in addressing progress in daily habits through a written document.

Respectfully submitted,



PJ Thompson
Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator

cc: Bishop Bernard J. Harrington
J. Krough

JK000249

JUL 28 2005

MONTHLY REPORT TO BISHOP

CONFIDENTIAL

This self-reporting mechanism shall include:

- A regular Monthly Report completed by the priest at the request of the Bishop, submitted to the Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator.
- Periodic meetings to be held by telephone conference with the Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator for review of the submitted Monthly Report.
- Two meetings annually with the bishop or his delegate.

Name: Jack KroughDate of Report: 26 July 2005Ongoing Formation and Pastoral Care

- a. In your previous report, you mentioned six components which mark your personal lifestyle plan that enable you to foster spiritual growth and ongoing healthy living. Please reflect on an experience from both your prayer time and meeting attendance this past month. Share how these experiences affected (changed, troubled, enlightened, strengthened or supported) you since the last report.

Prayer/Spiritual Experience:

I believe that any encounter with God changes us. I have learned to trust the often subtle ways the Spirit moves. That prayer has helped my spiritual growth I do not doubt. But I do not catalogue its effects for fear that it will become self-centered. It is enough for me to know that each day offers me the chance to rest in God's presence and trust in the work of his love.

Support Group Meeting:

12 Step Meetings keep my feet firmly planted on the ground. This past week I listened to someone described the kind of thinking I know very well. His courage challenged me to remain truthful. The realization that I am not where he is gave me a glimpse of where I am today versus a few years ago. I also listened to a 5th Step this month - always a humbling experience.

- b. During your phone report, you talked about the hours spent writing. This can be both refreshing and draining mental exercise. How do you attend to daily physical exercise?

I walk the dog for 30-60 minutes a day. I also work on the lawn most days. When I moved to Barron the lawn was in bad shape. I have replanted major portions of it. Mowing is actually an enjoyable form of exercise. 2 hours of work and I get to enjoy a finished project.

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL
 Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator
 55 West Sanborn Street • Winona, Minnesota 55987

c. Prayer Life

Have you have kept the Eucharist the center of daily life? YES NO

Are you faithful daily to the Liturgy of the Hours? YES NO

Have you been to spiritual direction this month? YES NO

Next scheduled date: 11 August

Comments:

I celebrate a private mass weekdays and attend a parish Mass Sundays. I find the balance helpful. It help me to avoid isolation from the larger Church.

Support Systems

Describe how you used your persons/systems of support this past month, to foster ongoing recovery and healthy living:

I had lunch with a member of my support team this month, had dinner with a priest friend, and talked on the phone with my editor/writer friend about our current writing projects and the ways we try to incorporate a spiritual dimension to our work. I spend an hour or two most evenings with my family.

Other Areas

You have shared a variety of things about your current writing project, describing it as a source of life for you. Through this project, have you encountered any sources of struggle?

There are days when I finish five pages with a genuine sense of satisfaction, and then are days when I rewrite a page several times only to scrap the work the next morning. I am better at knowing that a scene doesn't work than knowing how to fix it, especially when fixing it usually means throwing out three days of work. When I am immersed in the work, it is hard to come up for air. I have to remind myself to pay attention to the life around me instead of focusing all my energy on the "world" I have created.

JK

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL
Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator
55 West Sanborn Street • Winona, Minnesota 55987

Are there any areas in your life that pose problems for you at the present time?

no

Contact with adolescents and young male adults

1. Have you been alone with an adolescent or young male adult since the last report?

YES NO

If so, please describe the circumstances of each instance.

2. Have you attempted to place yourself in situations in which you could socialize with adolescents or young male adults? YES NO

If so, please describe the circumstances of each instance.

Domicile (Residency)

Note: If you relocate or change contact information, please notify the Pastoral Care Assistance Coordinator of the change immediately.

Have you spent time away overnight from your primary domicile or quasi-domicile?

YES NO Please explain.

I spent two nights with my parents. At present I am house and dog sitting for for 6 days.

Additional Comments/Questions Generally speaking, how are things going for you?

Very well. My life feels balanced.

Please return in the enclosed self-addressed envelope within ten days of receipt.

JK000252

JK

PJ Thompson

To:

Subject: RE: Monthly visit

Thanks for the kuddos Jack. I did receive your written report...thanks for your timely response again. I stopped into the office today to pick up a few things. My husband has been in the hospital since Tuesday. He was in surgery for a little over seven hours...but, they moved him to a regular room today from ICU. He's progressing slowly, but well. I guess I've been a bit preoccupied. It will be nice to check in with you. Hope you had a wonderful birthday today. I was going to call and sing...but thought maybe you'd be out celebrating. Blessings, and I'll touch base next week!
PJ

From: JLeeK@aol.com

Sent: Friday, August 05, 2005 2:36 PM

To: PJ Thompson

Subject: Monthly visit

Dear PJ

Congratulations on your appointment as chancellor. Definitely the right person for the job (though I confess to being a little hazy about all that the chancellor does).

I trust you got my July report. And look forward to visiting with you when your schedule permits.

Again congratulations and prayers for the continued success of your ministry.

—Jack K

8/11/2005

JK000253

JK



TO P.J. Thompson
FROM Jack L. Krough
SUBJECT November Report
DATE 1 December 2005

November focused on work projects and spiritual discernment of my future goals in ministry and life. After consultation with my spiritual director, support group, and literary advisor, I have reaffirmed my commitment to the work that grows out of my spiritual life.

Marketing *Prodigal Blood* to agents is an ongoing project. Marketing a novel is never easy; marketing a novel that explores themes of compassion and forgiveness is especially challenging at this time. My literary advisor in Florida, a successful author and editor, reassured me that my book is a mature work of literary fiction that will eventually find its audience. Since he has always been supportive but brutally honest, I trust his judgment. It also reflects the evaluations I have received from my test readers. Marketing will continue until I find the right agent and publisher for *Prodigal Blood* and future projects. I am presently rewriting an earlier manuscript that a small publishing house encouraged me to revise and resubmit. I am also doing background research for my next book which I hope to start in January.

My spiritual director has challenged me to better articulate my understanding my work as integral to my ministry. Asked what I will do if *Prodigal Blood* is not successful, I answered, "Write the next one." I will remain happily anonymous if I can share what my spiritual journey has taught me. This month Peter's words have felt particularly relevant: "Lord, to whom shall we go? You have the words of everlasting life." I experience God's call in my work and I want to be faithful to it. Of course, the support of my family, support group, and my literary mentor makes it much easier.

The Eucharist, Liturgy of the Hours, and Centering Prayer continue to provide the framework for my day. In November my spiritual reading was James Harpur's *Love Burning in the Soul: The Story of Christian Mystics from St. Paul to Thomas Merton*. For Advent, I am reading St. Bernard of Clairvaux's *On the Song of Songs*. I also read Wayne Teasdale's *A Monk in the World*, a recommendation from Basil Pennington before his death.

I attended a SLAA meeting and an online meeting each week. I gave a reflection on the Second Step to my SLAA meeting last week. I also met with my sponsor in Minneapolis.

I spent a night at _____ home after attending the Minnesota Opera Company's *Tosca*. I also spent two nights at my parent's home and spent an afternoon with _____. As a favor to my Lutheran minister friend here in _____, I photographed his daughter's wedding.

JK000254

In answer to our mutual need for exercise Mickey, a.k.a. the dog, and I took walks. Mickey marked trees; I didn't. In the evening I usually read, watched an hour of television with my brother-in-law or worked on a photography project. Creating, whether in words or image, is very good for my soul. Unlike words which require me to keep the marketplace in mind, I photograph for my own enjoyment. No one else has to be interested in my series of photographs of a pair of my old jeans.

The greatest challenge in November was reviewing my commitment to my work. I struggled with the frustration of marketing a book that a professional editor judged mature, but faces an uncertain future in an industry presently geared to nonfiction and bestsellers. There was the temptation of the quick fix offered by the 'Publish-on-Demand' industry. But if I want to reach a large audience and build a career, it may massage my ego but won't move me forward. So I trust that God has brought me to this work, will sustain me as I continue to hone my craft, and will open doors when the time is right.

A handwritten signature in cursive script, appearing to read "J. Krogh", followed by a long horizontal line extending to the right.

JK



TO P.J. Thompson
FROM Jack L Krough
SUBJECT December Report
DATE 2 January 2006

Advent and Christmas are seasons when I acutely miss active ministry. To avoid depression I increased my exercise, maintained my daily routine of work and prayer, and tried to be mindful of my tendency to isolate when faced with uncomfortable and unwanted emotions. The best part of Advent was being present through prayer at penance service and advent liturgies across the diocese.

I started work on my third novel, working title *A Flickering Light*. It took three weeks to write first three chapters. It took almost three weeks before I was satisfied with the fourth. Sometimes the words come easily. Other times I have to try various approaches until I find a way to advance the storyline economically. I seem to have to try every convoluted path before settling on the direct route.

When my work is done for the day, I relax by studying Photoshop. I find great satisfaction in working on my own photographs. But in December I found even more satisfaction in improving and retouching images for family and friends. I found a faded photograph of my father's father. He died when my father was fifteen. I was able to restore it for Christmas. Seeing Dad's reaction was my highlight of the family Christmas celebration. I was also able to restore a photograph for my mother and refinish last photograph of his mother. Spending an hour or two working with my digital tablet and pen gives me time to think and pray.

The Eucharist, Liturgy of the Hours, and Centering Prayer structure my day. I read St. Bernard of Clairvaux's *On the Song of Songs* for Advent. Presently I am reading a biography of Teresa of Avila and James Frey's *A Million Little Pieces*, a memoir of his recovery from alcohol and drug addiction. The book is a painful reminder of where our addictions can lead us.

I attended a SLAA meeting and an online meeting each week. I met with my sponsor at the end of the month. I also accompanied one of my brother-in-law's coworkers to his first AA meeting.

I spent New Year's Eve at home in Woodbury. I spent no other nights away from home.

JL Krough

JK000256

JK



TO P.J. Thompson
FROM Jack L Krough
SUBJECT January Report
DATE 2 February 2006

Two weeks ago I visited a former student serving a life sentence at Stillwater State Prison. Our two hour conversation swung back and forth between the horrific crime he committed at sixteen and the present. His efforts to find meaning and purpose in a life constrained by punishment challenged me to reflect on my own life of penance.

The Church's direction to live a penitential life only confirms the dictates of my own heart. The *ora et labora* of my days reminds me of my past. The Eucharist consoles me, but the absence of a congregation reminds me of what I have lost. As I pray for the bishop, priests, and people of the diocese every morning and evening, I miss sharing in their struggles and joys. As I read accounts of the Church's struggle to help victims heal, the inability or unwillingness of some to accept this help, and the desire of a few to use their suffering as a weapon against the Church, I am reminded again and again of my own complicity in this crisis. Whenever a Sunday Gospel touches my heart and I yearn to share some insight, I miss the gift of public ministry. God's forgiveness consoles me, but I never forget that there are some within and outside the Church who will never consider me worthy of trust and compassion. I used to worry about "my good name;" now, for the sake of my family, the schools and parishes I served, the presbyterate, and diocesan church, I pray to have no name at all.

This is not to say that a penitential life is without its joys and consolations. In his writings Charles de Foucault talks of the "hidden life in Nazareth. I find satisfaction in seeking that life myself. Quietly supporting the bishop and his co-workers through prayer is work I take seriously. Even as I struggle to find an audience for my writing, I find satisfaction in creating stories that one day may help readers reflect upon the gospel in a new way. I try to approach 12-Step meetings with a listening heart because compassionate listening possesses the power to heal speaker and listener alike. I often meditate on St. Paul's faith that "when I am weak, then I am strong." I sense the truth of the apostle's words though I am still a slower learner when it comes to abandoning myself to their wisdom. Accepting my weakness and the pain I have caused is made easier by the example of the Church which has not abandoned me.

During January I continued my daily spiritual practices and weekly meetings. I did not spend any nights away from home in the past month. Phone conversations and visits with a few support friends added just enough spice to season my life.

JL Krough

JK000257



To: PJ Thompson, Chancellor
 From: Jack Krough
 Date: 1 March 2007
 Subject: February Report

The past month has been challenging. My mother's recovery has slowed. While I continue to hope that she will return to her apartment at _____, I now have to consider the possibility that she may not be able to manage in an independent living facility. The _____ Care Center staff agreed to her release on Friday, 16 February. Instead she returned to the hospital for four days. Since her release back to the nursing home, nausea, back pain, and a urinary infection has resulted in negligible progress exacerbated by depression. 'When' has become 'If' in my mind and, if I am reading her correctly, in my mother's mind too. I have scheduled appointments with an internist and urologist in the hope of finding a cause for her new symptoms.

At St. Luke's one of my first challenges was identifying my emotions. I knew I was feeling something (in those days usually an unwanted emotion), but had difficulty naming it. The acorn did not fall far from the tree. One of my challenges is to intuit my mother's emotions since she finds naming them very difficult. At best I can elicit a few sentences before she changes the subject. My sister is coming this weekend. It will provide me a little break and someone with whom I can discuss my mother's future.

My sponsor and I did an inventory last week based on HALT. Hunger and loneliness have not been a problem for me. But I do recognize feelings of anger and tiredness. The anger arises from my own need for my mother to make progress and my feeling of helplessness. I also get very tired. After picking her up, taking her to for a doctor's appointment, and then returning her to the nursing home, all I want to do is nap.

I recognize the signs of mild depression. I ask myself the question used to ask me, "Do you think someone else would feel the same way in this circumstance?" My answer is 'yes.' Staying in touch with my sister and friends helps. Work on *Free Cell* helps, though my productivity has suffered. I am learning to use Corel Painter with photographs. Though I am still very much a beginner, I am excited by its creative potential. But at the core of my being prayer, Eucharist, and this opportunity for minister sustains me.

Within the next month my mother will be well enough to return to her apartment at _____ or we will have to consider another long term arrangement to meet her needs. We are not the first family to face this dilemma, but I take comfort in knowing that regardless of the doubts, fears, and pain ahead, we will act in unity.

JK



To: PJ Thompson, Chancellor
From: Jack Krough
Date: 3 April 2007
Subject: March Report

March was an exercise in patience. My life remains focused on the care of my mother. My ministry to her is an exercise in the power of powerlessness. I do whatever I can to support, encourage, cajole and facilitate her recovery; then I have to let go. Knowing when to push and when to step back is seldom clear. Fortunately she is making progress again. I hope she will be well enough to return to her independent living apartment before the end of April. Will she be able to remain there? I don't know.

I have been frustrated by the limited amount of work I have been getting done on my manuscript. I kept telling myself that I should be able to continue the same pace of writing as before my mother's illness, but it wasn't happening. Finally last week I let myself "off the hook." Wednesday I drove my mother to [redacted] for an appointment with her internist. The trip took four hours and I was back at my mother's apartment in [redacted] by 2:00. I thought I should work but felt exhausted. I decided to take a short nap that ended up lasting four hours. Until then I don't think I fully realized how much energy I expend caring for mom. God has been generous in giving me the resources to care for her, but I needn't be greedy. If this manuscript takes months longer than I originally projected, so be it. I know that my priorities are appropriate.

As a part of my self-care I spend at least two nights a week in Barron. [redacted], my brother-in-law, has enlisted my help in a business project that require a photographer and graphic artist. I am excited. It offers me an opportunity to repay their kindness. I also look forward to the challenge. Photography offers me a break from the world of words and this project will improve my camera and Photoshop skills. Plus [redacted] purchased an Epson 4800 professional printer that will allow me to make large format prints for the project and myself.

My mother's illness has provided the framework for Lent. It has stripped away illusions and invited me into a world where suffering is not voluntary and fasting does not end after forty days. Though I look forward to the end of my mother's sojourn in Egypt, I am grateful for the desert days it has provided me. I continue my normal spiritual practices and 12-Step commitment. I plan to spend the Easter Triduum in [redacted]. I remain faithful to my recovery.

JK000259

JUN 06 2007



To: P.J. Thompson
From: Jack Krough
Date: 4 June 2007
Subject: May Report

A month ago today my mother died, a year and thirty-five days after my father. My initial reaction to her death was relief. The last four and a half months of her life were difficult. I saw her release from pain and the inevitable indignities of nursing care as liberation. She lived and died as a woman of faith and she is now experiencing the fullness of her discipleship.

For me the loss has been a slow awakening. Only in the past two weeks have I had time to reflect on my journey with her these past five months. Small events both sweet and bitter that we shared come to mind unbidden. For me it has been a time of gentle sadness. I am grateful for the role I could play in the last chapter of her life on earth. During these past few weeks I have also become aware of new responsibilities. I can no longer rely on my parents to represent us at Krough and weddings, funerals, and reunions. The presence of our extended family at the funeral meant so much to me. I want to be present to them in the same way.

I feel very stable and balanced. I take time for myself when I needed silence to grieve and pray. I take advantage of the ministry of friends when I need it. At the present I am very happy to be home in Barron (though I did escape to a state park when my grand-nieces and nephew infested the house last Saturday). Waseca is my hometown, but I felt no regret leaving it. Wisconsin is home.

I am presently reestablishing my routine of prayer and work. Though from the outside it looks the same, I sense the budding of something new born of the past five months. Last week my sponsor pointed out that self-forgiveness is still a work-in-progress for me. If God allows me to craft a penitential life of prayer and service, I will be content to serve the diocese and church in that way.

Since returning to Barron I have spent two nights in Waseca working on my mother's affairs and one night in Duluth visiting a member of my support group. I have attended my 12-Step meetings and met with my sponsor. Though it has been a stressful month, I have not compromised my commitment to prayer, celibacy, and my ministry of prayer for the bishop, his priests and coworkers, and the people of the Diocese of Winona.



To: PJ Thompson, Chancellor
 From: Jack Krough
 Date: 2 October 2007
 Subject: Monthly Report

With the end of Phase I radiation and chemotherapy, I am now waiting for my body to recovery before surgery which is tentatively scheduled for 31 October. By the end of September the uncomfortable and inconvenient side effects disappeared. But getting back to a semblance of routine has proven challenging. Cancer has inspired a lengthy examen of conscience. I have lived with the consequences of my most egregious sins for years. What I now see are veins of selfishness and self-serving, opportunities for minister too easily dismissed, my failure to treasure God's gifts while medicating myself with the ephemeral. At the end of her life Mother Teresa could say to God, "I have never refused you anything." I cannot. My hope is that God will include me among the poor who will know his compassion.

I am aware of my temptation to isolate. Though touched by the concern of family and friends, most want to be my cheerleaders. They encourage a positive attitude, point to advances in cancer treatment, and pray for my full recovery. But I only pray, "Thy will be done." Early in the diagnosis process I learned that this is not what most people want to hear. Fortunately I have three friends with whom I can be honest. My pastor friend in Duluth, a member of my support team, served ten years as a hospital chaplain. That experience and his faith provide me with the feedback I need. The witness of my friend in prison also encourages me. His faith has matured in an unforgiving world. His trust in God's forgiveness and compassion for him encourages me to believe that, regardless of the outcome, God will accomplish his will in me. I met _____ in Eau Claire for lunch in September. I was touched that he would drive over two hours to spend the afternoon with me. I was even more touched when he told me that I had been more transparent with him than ever before.

As I recover from Phase I, I am able to travel a little more. Besides trips to Eau Claire for treatment at the beginning of the month, I made two trips to the prison in Stillwater, two to Woodbury to have dinner with _____, a trip to Duluth, and a trip to Minneapolis for a SLAA meeting. They were all day trips. Mornings are an "iffy" time for me. I prefer being at home until I know what my body is going to do.

I am really anticipating surgery at the end of October. My only surgery was an appendectomy at eleven, so surgery and a stay of five to seven days in the hospital will be a new experience for me. I am curious to see how I meet whatever pain lies ahead. In her last months, my mother taught me how gracefully a person can live with pain and disappointment. Now I will get to see how much I learned from her.

JK

PJ Thompson

From: PJ Thompson
Sent: Thursday, October 04, 2007 12:32 PM
To: 'Jack L Krough'
Subject: RE: Thanks

Jack,

How good to hear from you. When you wake up and can say, "This has been a very good day!" then you have grace on your side...at least for today. I received your note at home yesterday...which came at a good moment for me. Things have been a bit on the stressful side with the changing of the guard. It's amazing to see the power of change...it causes some to shut down - some to rejoice and some to panic. In the midst, I get to be a confidant and manager of all business and emotion. In these moments, I stop to pause and ask for grace.

How wonderful to get a note from a friend and then a quick e-mail as well.
Thanks for your kindness.
Keep me in your prayers!
pj

-----Original Message-----

From: Jack L Krough [mailto:jleek@aol.com]
Sent: Thursday, October 04, 2007 12:20 PM
To: PJ Thompson
Subject: Thanks

Dear PJ

This has been a very good day. In the mail I received the card you forwarded. It was from a former student promising prayers and reminding me that I was a positive influence on some. Thank you for sending it to me, Best of all I got the Courier for the first time. Might not be a big deal to most people, but it was a big deal to me.

Thank you,
jack



To: PJ Thompson, Chancellor
 From: Jack Krough
 Date: 1 April 2008
 Subject: Accountability Report

Nine months ago I felt healthy, but had cancer. Today I don't have cancer, but am no longer healthy. Though I accept reassurances that I will feel better after completing this round of chemotherapy, I am also beginning to discover that there are side effects from the radiation, chemotherapy, and surgery that may not disappear. I believe and want to believe that this path will draw me closer to God. I believe and want to believe that something good will come from this journey. I believe and want to believe that I am answering 'yes' to God. But I wonder if I have the strength and patience to bear my small sliver of the cross on a path that seems to have no end.

Perhaps it was unrealistic to think it could be otherwise, but my illness seems to permeate every dimension of my life. I am at the stage in this round of chemotherapy when the cumulative effects of treatment offer no respite. Nausea and neuralgia make it difficult for me to get out of house. And though I am grateful for my supportive family and friends, I sometimes find their care exhausting. Whenever asked how I am feeling I am torn between the truth (still sick) and what they hope to hear (feeling much better, thank you). I am too attached to my 'brave face' mask. But the truth is: I am scared, not of death, but of the relentless grinding down of a long illness.

The greatest joy of this penitential season occurred on Monday of Holy Week, and [redacted] drove to Barron to spend the morning with me. On the day of the Chrism Mass when the priests renew their commitment to ministry, they wanted to spend time with me. It was a wonderful gift. It made Holy Week and the Easter Triduum very special for me. Despite the physical distance, I felt joined at the heart to the mysteries celebrated across the diocese.

I have not traveled away from Barron in the past months. I continued my spiritual and recovery commitments. Hopefully I will finish my post-operative course of chemotherapy in the next six weeks. I will also be working with a urologist and pain expert to find remedies for some of the side effects of my cancer treatment program.

JK



CONFIDENTIAL

To: PJ Thompson, Chancellor
From: Jack Krough
Date: 6 June 2008
Subject: Accountability Report

Depression is a gray fog that leaches the vibrant colors from life and promises that only darkness lies ahead. Experience tells me that depression is a liar, but it is so convincing. It threatens me with a future of small crosses, embarrassing medical side-effects, and humiliating physical reminders of my flawed humanity.

I have been looking forward to starting the process of weaning myself off of Fentanyl. Instead for the past month I have been struggling with edemas that have caused my feet and legs to swell. Even more humiliating has been incontinence at night and even during naps. The first night I surrendered to the necessity of "Depends" was a low point in the past two months. I meet with my urologist this week. Hopefully some path of treatment will present itself. Of course my depression assures me otherwise.

The pope's visit to the United States reminded me of the need to continue to live a life of penitence and faith. Yes, I hurt the body of Christ. Yes, I brought shame to the Holy Father, the bishop, and the church. And there are souls that need God's healing ministry but cannot trust the Church's ministers because of me. And I cannot change the past. I can only live in trust that God has forgiven me, and that somehow, sometime, somewhere I still have gifts to share. I am being asked to believe that the threads of my life, threads that seem to me so weak and frayed, can still create strong, useful cloth. I cannot see how God can accomplish some good from my life, but I have to trust God will.

My medical problems and depression caused me to review "HALT" with my sponsor. Hungry—eating is often a chore. Angry—at myself, at the selfishness that so often has seasoned my life, and at my body's inability to overcome this illness. Lonely—I am tempted to put off visits with friends until I'm feeling better. The truth is that I need to spend time with friends so that I begin to feel better. Tired—I am tired of pills that don't help, tests that reveal nothing new, and my own excuses for not getting back to my work.

I have not traveled away from Barron in the past months. I continued my spiritual and recovery commitments. I will continue to work with my family doctor, urologist, and oncologist to resolve, if possible, my current medical problems. In July, the first anniversary of my cancer diagnosis, I will undergo tests to determine the status of my illness.

JK000264

JK
Thompson, PJ

To:
Subject: RE: Health update

Jack,

Thanks for the update...I will be certain to pass this news on to bishop. Know that you have been added to my 'outbound' prayer chain as well as kept in my daily prayers for this upcoming procedure. When you enter this process with an open heart and the commitment of "Whatever God asks of me, the answer is yes" you can't help but do well.

I will pray especially that your pain be minimal and your tolerance for any struggle be gargantuan!

Blessings,
PJ

-----Original Message-----

From: jleek1@mac.com [mailto:jleek1@mac.com]
Sent: Tuesday, July 22, 2008 12:15 PM
To: Thompson, PJ
Subject: Health update

Dear PJ,

Just wanted to let you (and through you the bishop) that I will be having surgery next Wednesday, 30 July, to biopsy some enlarged lymph glands in my groin. They may simply be enlarged because of the combined effects of radiation, chemo, and surgery. But of course metastasis is also a possibility.

I am also being treated for lymphedema which has caused my legs and feet to retain fluid. I complain that I now have my grandmother's ankles! They have also discovered that my bladder is not functioning normally. Without catheterization, I retain 500-700 cc of urine. I now self-catheterize four times a day. Fortunately the reality of catheterization is less uncomfortable than the idea of it. And at least there is some part of my medical care that I can actually control.

Though next Wednesday's surgery will likely be outpatient, I am not looking forward to it. I am less fearful of the results of the biopsy than the after effects of the surgery. I have just begun the process of weaning myself off fentanyl and hope that pain management will be manageable without heavy duty narcotics.

But to whatever God asks of me, the answer is "yes"

Thank you for your prayers and know that I always hold you in my heart.

--Jack Krough



PJ Thompson, Chancellor
 Jack Krough
 10 November 2008
 Accountability Report

I've delayed sending this report hoping to deliver good news about my medical condition. However it continues to be a challenge. For the last eight weeks, my doctors have tried various medications hoping to calm my overactive colon. But my digestive system has proven to be as contrarian as I have sometimes been. Next week they will begin to test me for a condition that is difficult to diagnose: lymphatic colitis. I hope this diagnosis proves accurate since my present medical condition certainly affects my quality of life. I can live with the colostomy, neuropathy, and lymphedema. And if necessary I can live with this too. However it makes it difficult to keep the stoma clean and opens up possibilities for infection. Nevertheless my "yes" to God is without conditions and, if the cause of my problems remains a medical mystery, then I will have to discover what it has to teach me.

I just finished reading a book that was very helpful to me. *An Infinity of Little Hours* by Nancy Klein Maguire describes the journey of five men who enter a Carthusian monastery in England in the early 1960s. While I have never been attracted to the Carthusian charism, I could identify with their experiences and the wisdom their monastic elders shared with them. As I continue to mature in the penitential and prayerful life the church has asked me to live, their idealism and radical commitment is a challenge to me. I am grateful that God put this book in front of me at this time. "When the student is ready, the teacher will come."

I have read with interest the news of the appointment of Bishop Quinn as coadjutor. Of course I have mixed feelings. Though I am happy for Bishop Harrington, I will miss his compassionate ministry to me. And I worry that all Bishop Quinn will know of me are my sins. I pray that, if it is God's will, you will find value in my hidden ministry of prayer for the diocese, its priests and people.

I was very pleased to get a call from [redacted] inviting me to a gathering with my classmates and [redacted]. I so appreciated [redacted] visit during holy week last spring. Despite the complications of a two hour trip, this is one journey I look forward to making. After I returned from St. Luke's, I value the opportunity to gather with priests, and I miss their presence in my life now. So this will be a real gift to me.

I remain faithful to my spiritual and recovery commitments. During the past two months I drove to Stillwater three times and several shorter trips to state parks to do some photography. In addition to my own writing, I spent a significant amount of time working in the yard and helping my brother-in-law move his business into his new offices. I have seen no signs of anything that would threaten my sobriety. God continues to be very good to me and I remain grateful for the Ministry he has given me.

JK

From: Larry Dose (dose)
To: EMCGRATH
Subject: Fr. Jack Krough Loan

Fr. McGrath, Fr. Krough owes us \$5,600.00 and does not appear to be making any payments. I have attached the note document but it only mentions that Fr. Krough agrees to repay the entire amount (interest free) according to a schedule to be determined at a later date. I thought I should bring it to your attention so that you could address this with him.

Thanks much!

Larry D.

JK000267



PJ Thompson, Chancellor
Jack Krough
1 August 2009
Accountability Report

It has been a busy and productive summer. I photographed my nephew's wedding; I am printing a niece's wedding photographs; I photographed the son of a friend's rock band for their CD; I recently photographed a tractor pull for my brother-in-law's business. I am also printing large farm maps for his insurance agency. It's small payment for all of his support these past years. It also challenges me to improve my technique and develop new skills. Currently I am studying studio lighting and web development. Francis wants to replace my small office at his office with a larger studio space in the building. I am a little nervous about his entrepreneurial expectations.

I have been surprised and touched by several priests who reached out to me this summer. I spent a very pleasant day in Eau Claire with Greg Leif. I sense that he sees me as a safe person with whom he can talk. I try to be a positive presence in his life. I also got a call from Leland Smith and Roy Literski inviting me to spend an afternoon on the river with them. Though I have received several letters from Roy, I was surprised to be invited to spend time with them. I am looking forward to it. Much to my surprise I got a letter from Ed McGrath last week. I had not heard from him since he left SLI.

I just finished reading Rembert Weakland's memoir. It was a spiritual gift for me. I appreciated his honesty about his own failings. But what I found most beneficial is his devotion to the Church even as he struggles with some of its teachings. He reminded me that, even in my present circumstances, I remain a priest still called to reflect Gospel and Catholic values in my words and actions. Even though I do not present myself as a priest, I must still be priestly in my words and actions.

My health continues to be a source of frustration. When I follow my very restrictive diet, my colon is fairly cooperative. But if I eat red meat, fatty or spicy food, it takes a week before my system returns to its new "normal." And on occasion it acts up for no discernable reason though I suspect that stress is also a trigger. I have a meeting with my oncologist in August and then am scheduled for another colonoscopy in November. I do not expect any surprises.

I continue to follow my routine of prayer and study. Presently I am rereading John Cassian's Conferences. The Desert Fathers speak to me. And the Conferences also reminds me of Basil Pennington who introduced me to Cassian. Basil came into my life at a time when I needed a spiritual father and I still feel his absence.

I continue to attend my 12-Step meetings and meet with my sponsor in person or by phone once a month. In the past three months I spent one night in Duluth staying at the home of my Lutheran minister friend and his family. With writing, photography, and work for my brother-in-law I have been active this summer and experience satisfaction in my work and personal life.



Office of the Judicial Vicar

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PASTORAL CENTER

July 9, 2013

Rev. Jack Krough

Dear Fr. Krough:

As you are aware, in 2002, His Excellency, Bishop Bernard Harrington invited you to request laicization from the Holy Father, and you were unwilling to do so. Now, on behalf of His Excellency, Bishop John Quinn, I once more invite you to request from the Holy Father a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state and celibacy.

In reflecting on your situation, Bishop Quinn desires to bring clarity to your status in the Church. No one doubts that you were validly ordained a priest and that you will remain a priest forever and into eternity. However, you have been out of priestly ministry for several years, and yet your formal status in the Church remains that of a priest of the Diocese of Winona. This is an ambiguous situation that needs to be resolved. By requesting (and obtaining) the dispensation from His Holiness, Pope Francis, it would become clear that you are a priest but that you have no canonical ties to the Diocese of Winona.

Please contact me in writing by July 30, 2013 about whether you are willing to do this. You should know that, if you are not, Bishop Quinn will approach the Holy Father himself to request that penalties be imposed upon you for your serious conduct against minors, not excluding dismissal from the clerical state.

Hoping to hear from you soon, I remain,

Sincerely yours in Christ,

Rev. Msgr. R. Paul Heiting, J.C.L.

(Rev. Msgr.) R. Paul Heiting, J.C.L.
Judicial Vicar/Delegate of the Bishop

cc: Most Rev. John M. Quinn, Bishop of Winona
Rev. Msgr. Richard M. Colletti, Vicar General
Rev. Msgr. Thomas P. Melvin, Vicar for Clergy

Chronology of Events for the Case of Rev. Jack Krough

February 2, 2006	Letter from JL Krough to PJ Thompson; an update
January 2, 2006	Letter from JL Krough to PJ Thompson; an update
Feast of All Saints	Letter from JL Krough to Bishop Harrington
December 1, 2005	Letter from JL Krough to PJ Thompson; an update
August 5, 2005	Email from JL Krough to PJ Thompson
July 28, 2005	Monthly Report to Bishop
June 29, 2005	Telephone Contact Summary Monthly Report
No Date	Interview @ St. Pius X Rectory
No Date	Interview @ Victims Services Office
No Date	Final Draft for the body of my Continuing Care Contract – Jack Krough
No Date	Listing of Fr. Krough's Assisi Heights Ministry
July 1, 2003	Memo from Bishop Harrington to Fr. Hoepfner
October 1, 2002	Letter from Bishop Harrington to Jack Krough
June 25, 2002	Letter from Bishop Harrington to Jack Krough
December 9, 2002	Report from Saint Luke Institute
June 25, 2002	Letter from Bishop Harrington to Jack Krough
June 19, 2002	Report from Saint Luke Institute
June 10, 2002	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
June 5, 2002	Email from _____ to PJ Thompson
No Date	Email from PJ Thompson to _____
May 24, 2002	Letter from _____ to Bishop Harrington
May 17, 2002	Email from Jack Krough to _____
May 15, 2002	Email from _____ to Jack Krough
April 10, 2002	Email from Jack Krough to _____
April 8, 2002	Email from _____ to Jack Krough
March 26, 2002	Email from Jack Krough to _____
March 26, 2002	Email from _____ to Jack Krough
March 25, 2002	Letter from Jack Krough to PJ Thompson
March 21, 2002	Email from Jack Krough to _____
March 21, 2002	Email from _____ to Jack Krough
March 14, 2001	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
December 27, 2001	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
September 17, 2001	Letter from Bishop Harrington to Jack Krough
September 12, 2001	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
September 10, 2001	Report from Saint Luke Institute
July 17, 2001	Letter from Fr. McGrath to Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
July 17, 2001	Letter from Fr. McGrath to Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
July 3, 2001	Letter from Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis to Fr. McGrath
July 3, 2001	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
May 7, 2001	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
March 16, 2001	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
March 13, 2001	Report from Saint Luke Institute
January 4, 2001	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
November 3, 2000	Memo from PJ Thompson to Fr. McGrath on meeting with Jack Krough
November 3, 2000	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
November 3, 2000	Memo from PJ Thompson to Fr. McGrath on a meeting of the Sexual Misconduct Team
September 10, 2000	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis

JK000414

September 1, 2000	Report from Saint Luke Institute
August 30, 2000	Letter from Jack Krough to Fr. McGrath about a loan
May 4, 2000	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
May 4, 2000	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
March 28, 2000	Report from Saint Luke Institute
March 10, 2000	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
February 7, 2000	Letter from Fr. McGrath to Fr. Krough requesting release of information form
January 8, 2000	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
November 2, 1999	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
November 1, 1999	Report on accountability session with Fr. Krough
October 1, 1999	Report from Saint Luke Institute
September 11, 1999	Letter to Fr. McGrath from Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis with report
August 13, 1999	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
August 3, 1999	Memo by Fr. McGrath on meeting with Jack Krough
July 27, 1999	Notes by Fr. McGrath
July 9, 1999	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
June 1, 1999	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
May 9, 1999	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
April 12, 1999	Letter from Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis to Fr. McGrath
April 9, 1999	Observations from Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
March 26, 1999	Report from Saint Luke Institute
March 17, 1999	Memo from Fr. McGrath to Fr. Hoepfner
February 17, 1999	Letter from Fr. McGrath to Jack Krough on ministry at Assisi Heights
February 1, 1999	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
January 8, 1999	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
January 5, 1999	Letter from Jack Krough to Bishop Harrington; welcome to diocese
December 21, 1998	Release of Information form
November 30, 1998	Observations by Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
November 5, 1998	Memorandum from Fr. McGrath
November 5, 1998	Letter from Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis with monthly Report on Jack Krough
October 16, 1998	Letter from Fr. McGrath to Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis discussing form report
October 14, 1998	Letter from Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis to Fr. McGrath
October 6, 1998	Memo from Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis to Fr. McGrath
September 23, 1998	Letter from Saint Luke Institute
September 14, 1998	Letter from Fr. McGrath to Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis
August 28, 1998	Memo from Sr. Martha Ann McGinnis to Fr. McGrath
No Date	Fr. Krough's Assisi Heights Ministry
July 17, 1998	Letter from Sisters of St. Francis to Fr. McGrath
July 17, 1998	Letter from Sisters of St. Francis to Fr. McGrath
July 14, 1998	Letter from JL Krough to Fr. Hoepfner
July 13, 1998	Letter from Fr. Hoepfner to Sr. Valerie Usher
June 24, 1998	Letter from Fr. McGrath to Sr. Valerie Usher, OSF
April 16, 1998	Letter from Fr. Hoepfner to Jack Krough
March 31, 1998	Note Receivable
March 19, 1998	Handwritten note
No Date	Memo from Larry Dose to Fr. Ed McGrath
March 18, 1998	Letter from Walter H. Bera, Ph.D. to John Vitek
February 26, 1998	Memo from John Vitek to Fr. Hoepfner
December 24, 1997	Letter from Saint Luke Institute
November 7, 1997	Letter from Saint Luke Institute

JK000415



14 July 2013

Rev. Msgr. Paul Heiting
Office of the Judicial Vicar
Diocese of Winona
P.O. Box 588
Winona, MN 55987

Dear Monsignor Heiting:

Acceding to Bishop Quinn's wishes, I request that the Holy Father, Pope Francis grant me a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state and celibacy. I make this request freely and without reservation.

In Christ,

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "J L Krough", with a long horizontal line extending to the right.

Jack L Krough

J L Krough

JK000412

Heiting, Msgr. Paul

To:
Subject: Letter

7-20-13

Greetings, Jack -

It was good to talk with you the other day. In order to get your case initiated, you need to petition the Holy Father for the favor of dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including celibacy. In that letter, it would be good to mention why this favor is being requested, i.e., the credible allegations that have been made against you regarding sexual misconduct with minors. The Holy Father's address is:

His Holiness, Pope Francis
00120 Via dell Pellegrino
Citta del Vaticano

You do not need to send this letter to Rome. Just send it to me and we will include it in your case. Thank you for your help. I hope and pray that your physical challenges continue to be manageable for you.

Paul

God Bless,

Rev. Msgr. R. Paul Heiting, JCL
Judicial Vicar

"The salvation of souls is the supreme law of the Church"
-Saint Raymond of Penafort

REC'D JUL 29 2013



25 July 2013

His Holiness, Pope Francis
00120 Via dell Pellegrino
Citta del Vaticano

Dear Holy Father:

I am writing to petition you for the favor of a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including celibacy. I make this request freely and without reservation.

An allegation of sexual impropriety with a minor has been made against me. It occurred in my first years as a priest. When confronted with the allegation, I admitted to it and was sent to a treatment program. After completing the program I was permitted to return to a restricted ministry, serving as chaplain to a community of religious women. In June of 2002, I was removed from all public ministry.

For the past eleven years, I have lived a life of prayer and penance. There seems little chance that I will ever be able to minister as a priest of the Diocese of Winona. For my actions that have brought shame upon the Church and damaged the trust that the people of God have in their ordained leaders, I am deeply sorry. I will continue to live a life of prayer and penance the rest of my life. But for the good of the Church, with deep sadness, I request that I be dispensed from the obligations of the clerical state.

In Christ my hope,

Jack L Krough

J.L. Krough

JK000409

REC'D JUL 29 2013



25 July 2013

His Holiness, Pope Francis
00120 Via dell Pellegrino
Citta del Vaticano

Dear Holy Father:

I am writing to petition you for the favor of a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including celibacy. I make this request freely and without reservation.

An allegation of sexual impropriety with a minor has been made against me. It occurred in my first years as a priest. When confronted with the allegation, I admitted to it and was sent to a treatment program. After completing the program I was permitted to return to a restricted ministry, serving as chaplain to a community of religious women. In June of 2002, I was removed from all public ministry.

For the past eleven years, I have lived a life of prayer and penance. There seems little chance that I will ever be able to minister as a priest of the Diocese of Winona. For my actions that have brought shame upon the Church and damaged the trust that the people of God have in their ordained leaders, I am deeply sorry. I will continue to live a life of prayer and penance the rest of my life. But for the good of the Church, with deep sadness, I request that I be dispensed from the obligations of the clerical state.

In Christ my hope,

Jack L Krough

J L Krough

JK000410

REC'D JUL 29 2013



25 July 2013

His Holiness, Pope Francis
00120 Via dell Pellegrino
Citta del Vaticano

Dear Holy Father:

I am writing to petition you for the favor of a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including celibacy. I make this request freely and without reservation.

An allegation of sexual impropriety with a minor has been made against me. It occurred in my first years as a priest. When confronted with the allegation, I admitted to it and was sent to a treatment program. After completing the program I was permitted to return to a restricted ministry, serving as chaplain to a community of religious women. In June of 2002, I was removed from all public ministry.

For the past eleven years, I have lived a life of prayer and penance. There seems little chance that I will ever be able to minister as a priest of the Diocese of Winona. For my actions that have brought shame upon the Church and damaged the trust that the people of God have in their ordained leaders, I am deeply sorry. I will continue to live a life of prayer and penance the rest of my life. But for the good of the Church, with deep sadness, I request that I be dispensed from the obligations of the clerical state.

In Christ my hope,

Jack L Krough

J L Krough

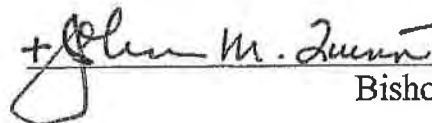
754 Oak St, Barron, WI 54812


DECREE

APPOINTMENT OF A NOTARY Case re: Reverend Jack R. Krough

In accord with c. 483, §2 and art. 4 of the *Normæ procedurales*, I hereby appoint the Reverend Msgr. Paul R. Heiting to serve as Notary in the preparation of the Acts for the Rev. Jack L. Krough petition to His Holiness for a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including sacred celibacy, mentioned in cc. 290, 3° and 291.

Given at the Chancery of the Diocese of Winona on October 9, 2013.


Bishop of Winona


Chancellor

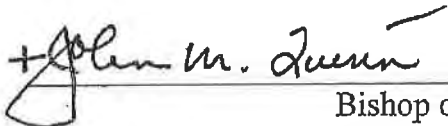
DECREE


APPOINTMENT OF AN INSTRUCTOR

Case re: Reverend Jack L. Krough

In accord with art. 4 of the *Normæ procedurales*, I hereby appoint the Reverend Glenn K. Frerichs to serve as the Instructor in the Rev. Jack L. Krough's present petition to His Holiness for a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including sacred celibacy, mentioned in cc. 290, 3^o and 291.

Given at the Chancery of the Diocese of Winona on October 9, 2013.


Bishop of Winona


Notary



FILE COPY

DIOCESE OF WINONA
PASTORAL CENTER

PERSONAL VOTUM OF INSTRUCTOR

Having been duly appointed on October 9, 2013, by His Excellency, Bishop John M. Quinn as Instructor of the present petition of Jack Lee Krough for a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state and sacred celibacy, and after inspecting the acts of the petition, I respectfully submit the following remarks and personal recommendation.

I. Summary of the Petitioner's professional background and seminary training

The Petitioner, born August 19, 1949 in Estherville, Iowa, was baptized and raised Methodist and attended twelve years of public school at Waseca, Minnesota. He then attended Morningside College, a Methodist college in Morningside, Iowa, for four years with the intent of teaching high school English upon graduation.

The Petitioner renewed acquaintances with an old friend, who had since become a Catholic priest, during his sophomore year. The impression this person left on the Petitioner led him to deeper study of, instruction in, and eventual reception into the Catholic Church. The Petitioner's thirst for theological and religious material during the remainder of college led him to the decision to apply for studies toward the priesthood after graduation.

Upon petition to the Most Reverend Bishop Loras Watters, the Petitioner assumed philosophical studies at the Immaculate Heart of Mary Seminary for the Diocese of Winona, Minnesota from August of 1971 until May of 1972. A positive evaluation was received of the Petitioner noting his strong faith and the conviction of his religious and Catholic values. The Petitioner began studies in theology at the Saint Paul Seminary, Saint Paul, Minnesota in the Fall of 1972. Upon the reception of minor orders, the Petitioner was dispensed from the impediment to Orders, as the Son of non-Catholic parents (*CIC/17 c. 987, 1°*), and ordained to the diaconate at the Cathedral of the Sacred Heart in Winona, Minnesota by the Most Reverend Loras J. Watters on May 23, 1975. Upon completion of theological studies and priestly formation, the Petitioner was ordained to the presbyterate at the same Cathedral by the Most Reverend Loras J. Watters on May 21, 1976.

II. Problems arising during the Petitioner's ministry

The Petitioner has served at multiple locations throughout the Diocese of Winona and as chaplain in the National Guard. The following events give foundation for the petition inasmuch as they illustrate his perpetual difficulty with celibacy and with chastity in general, and thereby manifest a lack of integrity in relation to his sacred promises before the Church.

- The Petitioner, while serving Saint Augustine Parish of Austin, Minnesota as Parochial Vicar and as a religion instructor at _____, was accused of photographing a _____ student in suggestive poses while in a dark room (pp. 55-57). The Petitioner initially denied repeating the behavior but later admitted to committing many improprieties (pp. 54-55, 64). On June 30, 1997, (p. 52) the same _____ student alleged

- that he had previously been treated inappropriately on a number of occasions beginning during his [redacted] (pp. 54-61). Accusations included the fondling of “his genitals on multiple occasions and, on a few occasions, masturbated him to the point of ejaculation.” In 1997 the Petitioner admitted “that he was inappropriately sexual with this person on many occasions although he maintains masturbatory activity happened only once. He admits that he was verbally manipulative with this person. . . . [The Petitioner] also admits that he was sexually inappropriate with several other minors during this time period.” Some of these include:
 - “fondled another [redacted] year old male during this time period”;
 - “wrestled with two [redacted] year old students and shared a hotel room in [redacted]” and slept with one of them in the same bed (pp. 64-66, see also p. 46);
 - photographed two male minors, one in [redacted] and one in approximately the early [redacted], both of whom were wearing gym shorts with the admission “that he socialized with them and took pictures of them in part because of his sexual feelings”;
 - “wrestled with another student who was approximately age [redacted]. He says that they both became sexually aroused and Fr. Krough touched this boy briefly on the genitals.” (pp. 64-66)
- During residency at Saint Stanislaus Parish in Winona, Minnesota, while assigned to teach at Cotter High School [redacted], the Petitioner invited the [redacted] student from [redacted], Minnesota, who later alleged impropriety, to drive to Winona to spend time with him. The Petitioner admitted to sharing the same bed with the [redacted] and “masturbating him to the point of ejaculation.” (p. 56)
- In October of 1996 the Petitioner demonstrated an inability to fully control impulses toward adult members of the same sex. The Petitioner “met a man through his work with the homosexual community. He reports that he fell in love with this man and they reportedly shared some affectionate and sexual contact but not sexual intercourse.” Retreating from the relationship, the Petitioner recalled that “he spent approximately nine or ten sessions with his therapist during which time he discussed his relationship with the adult male and talked about integrating acceptance of his homosexual feelings.” (p. 66)

On April 16, 1998, the Petitioner was assigned to serve as Chaplain of Assisi Heights in Rochester, MN with ministry restricted to the School Sisters of Notre Dame. He was not to be in one-on-one situations with young men and was to follow his after-care program (p. 85).

- An accusation was brought forward that sexual impropriety had been committed by the Petitioner on May 18, 2002. The Accuser was a [redacted] old male who had received pastoral guidance from the Petitioner through a Lenten Workshop and evening classes providing instruction about centering prayer. The Accuser approached the Petitioner seeking spiritual help during what he described to be a feeling of “hopelessness.” After the Petitioner talked to the Accuser in his office, it was decided that they would see a movie and eat out together at a restaurant. They then returned to the Petitioner’s apartment where appropriate boundaries were not respected. The accused alleged that “the touch involved touching my bottom, kissing my neck and touching my belly just above my belt through my t-shirt, sliding his hands across the cloth of my jeans over my penis” The Petitioner denies most of the allegations but admitted to violating boundary issues. He stated: “The boundary issues is that I didn’t keep it in my office and I didn’t keep it on the chair... From there...it becomes a matter of

interpretation..." (pp. 120-131) On June 10, 2002 the Petitioner returned to Saint Luke's Institute for further treatment.

III. Summary of events leading to departure from ministry and the present request

On June 25, 2002, the Most Reverend Bernard J. Harrington, the Bishop of Winona, Minnesota provided the Petitioner a letter stating:

As I discussed with you, in accord with the directions from the Charter for the Protection of Children and Young People of the United States Catholic Conference of Bishops, I hereby notify you that:

1. You are removed from all priestly ministry
2. You are not to present yourself in public as a priest; you will not wear clerical attire.
3. Although you are not to celebrate Mass publically, permission is granted for you to say a private Mass in your residence or your chapel (p. 136).

The Petitioner completed five years of periodic aftercare with the Saint Luke Institute in 2003. Since that time he has lived with his sister and brother-in-law in . His social contact has been limited but he has had contact with his priest support group in Southeastern Minnesota. The Petitioner has used his time for writing, prayer, and ongoing healing via support groups. Around June of 2007, the Petitioner was diagnosed with cancer of the colon and his health continues to deteriorate.

On July 25 of 2013 the Petitioner submitted a letter to His Holiness, Pope Francis, requesting the favor of dispensation from the obligations of the clerical, including sacred celibacy.

IV. Recommendation that dispensation be granted

Based upon a thorough reading of the acts, I recommend that a dispensation from obligations to the clerical state, including sacred celibacy, be granted because the Petitioner is entirely unfit to be entrusted to public ministry. The Petitioner's efforts to sufficiently curb Ephebophilic and homosexual inclinations have proven unsuccessful, even after significant amounts of therapy. This has resulted in severe injury being perpetrated upon several members of the faithful during several periods of his public ministerial life.

V. How the dispensation would contribute to the Petitioner's well-being

As indicated earlier, the Petitioner was suspended from all forms of public ministry for a period of more than twelve years. According to the Charter for the Protection of Children and Young People, of the United States Catholic Conference of Bishops, the Petitioner will never be permitted to return to any form of public ministry. Therefore, the grant of a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, sacred celibacy included, would provide a just and equitable alternative to confining the Petitioner to a perpetual state of suspension. As a member of the Christian faithful, this would provide the Petitioner juridic recognition of his condition in the Church, acknowledging the realistic nature and scope of that contribution he is able to provide toward the promotion and growth of the Church and its continued sanctification (cf. c. 210).

The Minnesota Child Victims Act, which took effect May 25, 2013, suspending all statutes of limitation for victims of child abuse for a period of three years, in order that they might bring civil

litigation against their perpetrator, and negligent institutions, has prompted a significant amount of negative publicity toward the Church. The Petitioner's ongoing relationship with the Church through the bond of Sacred Orders risks precipitating unnecessary attention upon him through secular media and other incensed individuals, thus unnecessarily disturbing the stable and quiet life of prayer and penance he has enjoyed thus far and has resolved to continue..

In his letter petitioning the Holy Father, the Petitioner has stated that he is deeply grieved by his actions, and the harm that has resulted from them. A dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, and sacred celibacy, would provide the Petitioner further assurance that every means to prevent his actions from provoking further scandal within the Church and in society has been exercised, thus allowing him to transition to a new period in life.

VI. How dispensation will contribute to the good of the universal Church, the Diocese of Winona, and the souls formerly entrusted to the Petitioner's care

The universal good of the Church will be served well in three ways if the favor of a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including sacred celibacy, is granted to the Petitioner.

1. Because the juridical status of the Petitioner has remained in an ambiguous state for twelve years; because the Petitioner is unable to be fully, or even partially, restored to active ministry within the Church; and because the people of God have the right to "direct their efforts to lead a holy life and to promote the growth of the Church and its continual sanctification, according to their own condition" (c. 210), the Universal Church's willingness to alter the juridical status of the Petitioner in accord with his request and with what he is reasonably able to live out during the remaining years of his life would be a manifestation of the Universal Church's responsibility toward equity and justice.
2. A close bond exists between each particular Church and the Universal Church—the particular encompassing the Universal—such that the effects of the particular Church directly promote the well being of the Universal Church (c.f. *Lumen gentium* 23). This bond between the Particular Church and the Universal Church is particularly apparent in regards to the general reputation and integrity of the clergy for the Universal Church.

The actions of the Petitioner, resulting from his struggle with Ephebophilia and same-sex attraction have been a source of scandal on multiple occasions throughout his ministry. This scandal has undoubtedly had a deleterious effect upon the life, mission, and vitality of this Diocese. Although the Petitioner has been sincere in his efforts to overcome these disorders, it is unreasonable to hold out hope for a remedy sufficient to merit a return to ministry. Additionally, the nature and gravity of the actions perpetrated upon several minors is of such kind and magnitude that scandal will always surround the Petitioner as a public minister of the Church. A dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including sacred celibacy, will contribute to the mitigation of this scandal both at present and during that anticipated period of heightened publicity when these grievous sins return to the public forum as a result of civil lawsuits brought against the Diocese of Winona.

3. The favor of dispensing the Petitioner from the obligations of the clerical state, and sacred celibacy, will provide concrete manifestation of the Universal Church's ongoing commitment to the protection of minors. The contemporary cultural climate in the United

States remains distrustful of the Universal Church's commitment toward the protection of children and vulnerable adults. Dispensing the Petitioner from obligations of the Clerical State will assure past victims, and the general public, that he is no longer to be admitted to ministry.

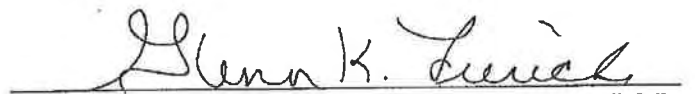
VII. Additional Comments

All of the acts presented in this case have been derived from the Petitioner's personal file in the archives of the Diocesan Chancery. The Petitioner requests a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including sacred celibacy, on his own initiative. Since all of the facts relevant and seminal to this case are present in his file—which includes his seminary evaluations, decrees, expert evaluations, Petitioner testimony to victim allegations, legal documentation and personal correspondence—the inclusion of an additional Petitioner deposition and further witness testimony would be superfluous.

For the information of the Congregation for the Doctrine of the Faith, certain documents in the Petitioner's file have not been inserted in to the acts of this file, due to a lack of relevance, include:

- Some Correspondence from St. Luke Institute (schedules)
- Business and Financial correspondence between Petitioner and Diocesan Bishops
- Correspondence between Petitioner and then-Bishop Vlazny (Diocesan Bishop) and then-Fr. Hoepfner (Vicar General) encouraging the Petitioner during periods of therapy
- Correspondence between Petitioner and Fr. Edward McGrath (Chancellor) encouraging the Petitioner to follow his health plan
- Monthly Reports and correspondence between Fr. Edward McGrath and Sr. Martha Ann McGuinnis, OSF (Petitioner's immediate supervisor) July 17, 1998-June 10, 2002
- Monthly Reports and correspondence between P.J. Thompson (Chancellor) and Petitioner and between P.J. Thompson and Sr. Martha Ann McGuinnis OSF (Petitioner's immediate supervisor) June 27, 2002-June 6, 2008
- Some legal correspondence between persons representing the Diocese of Winona and legal representation.

Given at the Chancellery of the Diocese of Winona on March 3, 2014.


(Very Reverend) Glenn K. Frerichs, J.C.L.
Case Instructor

From: Wright, Julie
nt: Thursday, December 12, 2013 2:32 PM
o: Colletti, Msgr. Richard
Attachments: SDOC9479.pdf

-----Original Message-----

From: Julie Wright [mailto:jwright@dow.org]
Sent: Thursday, December 12, 2013 1:31 PM
To: Wright, Julie
Subject:

This E-mail includes attached file(s) sent from "Savin4035sp" (4035/4135g).

Scan Date: 12.12.2013 14:31:03 (-0500)

**Voluntary Petition for Diospenation
From the Obligaitons of the Clerical State**

Rev. Jack Lee Krough

**A presbyter of the
Diocese of Winona
(Vinonaënsis)**

Respectfully submitted to the

CONGREGATION FOR THE CLERGY

With the assistance of

**MOST REV. JOHN M. QUINN,
BISHOP OF WINONA**

January 3, 2014

CURRICULUM VITÆ

FULL NAME OF PRESBYTER	JACK LEE KROUGH
-------------------------------	-----------------

SEE	Diocese of Winona (<i>Vinonaënsis</i>)
DIOCESAN BISHOP	John Michael Quinn

SIGNIFICANT EVENTS IN THE PETITIONER'S LIFE

Date of Birth	August 11, 1949
Place of Birth	Estherville, Iowa
Physical Address of Petitioner	
Minor Seminary	Immaculate Heart of Mary Seminary, in Winona, Minnesota (1971-1972)
Secular Profession(s)	
Major Seminary	Saint Paul Seminary in Saint Paul, Minnesota (1972-1976)
Admission among Candidates for Orders	February 2, 1973
Diaconate Ordination	May 23, 1975 Cathedral of the Sacred Heart Winona, Minnesota
Presbyteral Ordination	May 21, 1976 Cathedral of the Sacred Heart Winona, Minnesota

ASSIGNMENTS *(all in Diocese of Winona, unless otherwise noted)*

Year	Parish	Location	Appointment
1976	St. Augustine Parish	Austin, Minnesota	Parochial Vicar Instructor of Religion at Pacelli High School
1980	Cotter High School	Winona, Minnesota; Residence at St. Stanislaus, Minnesota	Faculty Member
1980	National Guard	Minnesota	Chaplain
1981	Advocate to Tribunal		
1985	Saint Pious X	Rochester	Parochial Vicar
1985	Lourdes High School	Rochester	Faculty Member
1990	All Saints Church/Saint Joseph Church	New Richland/Waldorf	Pastor
1996	Saint Edward's Catholic Church/Our Lady of Loretto Church	Austin/Brownsdale	Pastor
1998	Motherhouse of the Sisters of the Third Order Regular of St. Francis of the Congregation of Our Lady of Lourdes	Rochester, Minnesota	Chaplain

ACCUSATIONS AGAINST THE CLERIC <i>(all in Diocese of Winona, unless otherwise noted)</i>				
Year	Victim	Age	Imputable Acts	Denunciation

REASONS FOR REQUEST	As a result of sexual impropriety I am no longer able to serve the Church. For the last eleven years I have lived a life of prayer and penance. In bringing shame upon the Church and damaging the trust of the people of God, I request a dispensation from obligations to the clerical state for the good of the Church.
----------------------------	--

IRREVERSIBILITY OF THE SITUATION	As a result of previous actions sexual impropriety I am no longer able to serve the Church.
---	---

From: Frerichs, Glenn
nt: Wednesday, February 26, 2014 1:47 PM
To: Daniel, William
Subject: Re: Krough file

Great questions.

Msgr. Heiting will sign each page tomorrow. I was not planning to send it to Tom Braun but that may be a good idea. I'll have Stacey call Tom today.

FF

On Feb 26, 2014, at 1:35 PM, Daniel, William <wldaniel@DOW.org> wrote:

Fr. Frerichs,

Are we turning it over to Tom Braun before it goes to Rome?

Yes, once the pages are numbers, Msgr. Heiting as Notary will need to sign the authentication page. Then it should be ready to go to Rome.

Apparently, when we sent to the Congregation for the Clergy, they want each and every page notarized.

Bill

From: Frerichs, Glenn
Sent: Wednesday, February 26, 2014 11:58 AM
To: Daniel, William
Subject: FW: Krough file

Bill,

I mentioned to Stacey that we will probably be finished with the Krough file. As you may know, Tom Braun has been going through files of all the priests, per the recent court order. Your thoughts as to whether we are ready to turn it over at this point. One thought is that I should maybe have it available for the notary when he signs all copies of the acts.

FF

From: Glithero, Stacey
Sent: Wednesday, February 26, 2014 11:22 AM
To: Frerichs, Glenn
Subject: Krough file

Hi Father Frerichs!

If possible, Tom Braun's office would like to take the Krough file back with them on Friday after they drop off all of our other files. Shirley indicated you thought you would be finished with it by the end of this week and you are gone on Friday so if you could let me know tomorrow or have one of the Tribunal support staff let me know if it is okay for me to send to lawyer's office, that would be great.

Thanks,

Stacey Glithero

Assistant to the Vicar General & Chancellor

Diocese of Winona, Pastoral Center

55 West Sanborn Street

Winona, MN 55987

507-858-1242

507-454-8106 Fax

sglithero@dow.org

The contents of this e-mail message and any attachments are intended solely for the addressee(s) and may contain confidential and/or legally privileged information. If you are not the intended recipient of this message or if this message has been addressed to you in error, please immediately alert the sender by reply e-mail and then delete this message and any attachments. If you are not the intended recipient, you are notified that any use, dissemination, distribution, copying, or storage of this message or any attachment is strictly prohibited.



FILE COPY

DIOCESE OF SUPERIOR
OFFICE OF THE BISHOP

EPISCOPI VOTUM
domicilii oratoris

I, The Most Reverend Peter Forsyth Christensen, Bishop of the Diocese of Superior, Wisconsin, hereby declare, after carefully weighing the matter, that granting the favor of a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including sacred celibacy, to the Reverend Jack Lee Krough would not be a source of scandal to the people entrusted to my care.

It is my understanding that Fr. Krough, a Catholic Priest of the Diocese of Winona, has been suspended from public ministry in accord with the Charter for the Protection of Children and Young People since June 2002. It is also my understanding that he was given permission, by his Diocesan Bishop, to celebrate Mass privately in his own residence or chapel. However, since that time he has not been permitted to celebrate Mass publicly, to present himself in public as a priest, or to wear clerical attire since June of 2002. He has retained a domicile in the Diocese of Superior—namely, Barron, Wisconsin—for more than eleven years, residing with his sister and brother-in-law. To my knowledge, he has complied with all of the expectations of his Bishop during this time.

Fr. Krough appears to be leading a quiet life, respectful of the local Church. His presence in the Diocese of Superior has been uneventful and I do not anticipate that the favor of a dispensation from obligations to the clerical state would be a source of scandal or conflict in any way whatsoever.

The Most Reverend Peter F. Christensen
Bishop of Superior, Wisconsin



DIOCESE OF WINONA
OFFICE OF THE BISHOP
55 West Sanborn Street, P.O. Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987
507-454-4643
507-454-8106 (Fax)

FILE COPY

VOTUM EPISCOPI

I am writing in full support of a voluntary petition for a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state of the Reverend **Jack Lee Krough**, a priest of the Diocese of Winona, who was ordained by Bishop Loras J. Watters on May 21, 1976.

Reverend Krough has served several parishes and schools throughout his 28 years of priestly ministry. However, in June 2002 Rev. Krough was suspended from all active ministry as a result of multiple violations governed by the Charter for the Protection of Minors and Young People. He discontinued ministry immediately and since that time has faithfully adhered to the wishes of his diocesan bishop, choosing to live a quiet life with his Sister and Brother-in-law in Barron, Wisconsin. During these past 12 years Reverend Krough has occupied his time with writing various other hobbies. He has also been treating cancer of the colon and his health continues to deteriorate. In his petition to the Holy Father, Reverend Krough provides reason for this request. "For the past eleven years, I have lived a life of prayer and penance. There seems little chance that I will ever be able to minister as a priest of the Diocese of Winona ... I will continue to live a life of prayer and penance the rest of my life. But for the good of the Church, with deep sadness, I request that I be dispensed from the obligations of the clerical state."

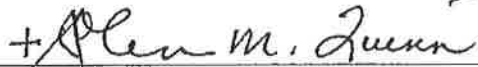
The favor of granting this dispensation would contribute to Rev. Krough's well being. As Diocesan Bishop, I recognize that neither I, nor my successors, will ever be able to reasonably consider reinstating Rev. Krough into any form of ecclesial ministry. The grant of this favor will enable him to transition to another period of life, thus providing closure for Rev. Krough to what has become a perpetual state of suspension.

The Minnesota Child's Victim Act, suspending all statutes of limitation for child abuse for three years, has thrust the abuse of minors by clergy into mainstream media. Scandal will always surround Rev. Krough, on account of his actions. However, the favor of a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state would provide Rev. Krough assurance that all means have been taken to prevent the provocation of further scandal as a result of his actions within the Church, both in the minds of souls formerly entrusted to his care and the general public. The quiet lifestyle of prayer and penance that Rev. Krough now enjoys will likely receive greater stability with the favor of a dispensation, particularly as media coverage of abuse of minors begins to intensify in this local area.

As the Bishop of Winona, I am confident that the grant of this same favor would also contribute to the welfare of the local Church without giving rise to scandal. People of the Diocese of Winona have experienced the pain, anger, and mistrust as a result of several clerics abusing minors. The People of God, through the favor of granting this dispensation, would provide the People of God additional assurance that the Catholic Church is doing all that it can to protect minors and vulnerable adults from potentially harmful situations. Past victims of abuse and the general public will receive this favor as one promoting a safe environment within the Church.

JK000421

Respectfully submitted before the Congregation of the Doctrine of the Faith on March 3, 2014.

A handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "John M. Quinn". The signature is written in dark ink and is positioned above a horizontal line.

Most Reverend John M. Quinn, D.D.
Bishop of Winona

JK000422



DIOCESE OF WINONA
OFFICE OF THE BISHOP
55 West Sanborn Street, P.O. Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987
507-454-4643
507-454-8106 (Fax)

FILE COPY

March 4, 2014

His Excellency
Archbishop Carlo Maria Viganò
Apostolic Nunciature of the United States of America
3339 Massachusetts Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20008-3687

Your Excellency:

Greetings of Peace and Joy in the Lord Jesus Christ!

I write today to request your gracious assistance. The enclosed file is for His Eminence, Gerhard Ludwig Cardinal Müller, Prefect of the Congregation for the Doctrine of the Faith. This file concerns the petition of an inactive priest, the Rev. Jack Lee Krough, of the Diocese of Winona, who has committed *graviora delicta* and is petitioning for a dispensation from the obligations of the clerical state, including sacred celibacy.

Would you be so kind as to see that this file reaches Cardinal Müller via diplomatic pouch?

I am most grateful not only for your assistance to me, but also for the assistance that you render to the entire Catholic Church in the United States.

With esteem, prayers, and best wishes I remain

Sincerely yours in Christ,

Most Rev. John M. Quinn
Bishop of Winona

Enclosure

JK000423



DIOCESE OF WINONA
OFFICE OF THE BISHOP
55 West Sanborn Street, P.O. Box 588
Winona, Minnesota 55987
507-454-4643
507-454-8106 (Fax)

FILE COPY

March 4, 2014

His Eminence
Gerhard Ludwig Cardinal Müller
Palazzo della Congregazione per la Dottrina della Fede
Piazza del S. Uffizio, 11
00193 Rome
ITALY

Your Eminence:

I am writing today in support of a voluntary petition for a dismissal from the clerical state, including celibacy, of the Reverend Jack Lee Krough, an inactive priest of the Diocese of Winona, who was ordained by my predecessor, Bishop Loras J. Watters, on May 21, 1978 at the Cathedral of the Sacred Heart in Winona, Minnesota. Jack admitted to acts of sexual misconduct against multiple minors in 1976, and he was later accused of sexual impropriety with an adult in 2002. In accord with Charter for the Protection of Children and Young People, Jack was removed from priestly ministry and forbidden to present himself in public as a priest on June 25, 2002 by my predecessor, the Most Rev. Bernard J. Harrington.

I have enclosed the petition for your review and consideration.

Your Eminence, I am grateful for your acceptance and consideration of this petition. Wishing you an abundance of divine blessing in your indispensable service to the Universal Church, and with the assurance of my prayers, I remain

Respectfully yours in Christ,

Most Rev. John M. Quinn
Bishop of Winona

Enclosure

JK000424

Jack Lee Krough

Status: Left Diocese of Winona

DOB: 8/11/1949 in Estherville IA Parents: John A. and Muriel Jean (Eastmen) Krough

Education:

1967 - 1971 - Attended Morningside College

1971 - 1972 - Attended Immaculate Heart of Mary Seminary in Winona

1972 - 1976 - Attended Saint Paul Seminary in Saint Paul Minnesota

Ordained 5/21/1976 at Cathedral of the Sacred Heart in Winona by the Most Rev. Loras J. Watters

Assignments:

6/11/1976 - Parochial Vicar for Saint Augustine in Austin

6/11/1976 - Instructor for Pacelli High School in Austin

6/23/1980 - Instructor for Cotter High School in Winona - in residence at Saint Stanislaus in Winona

11/25/1980 - Endorsement to Military Ordinariate for service as Chaplain in Minnesota National Guard

7/2/1985 - Parochial Vicar for Saint Pius X in Rochester

7/2/1985 - Instructor for Lourdes High School in Rochester

6/29/1990 - Pastor for All Saints in New Richland, Saint Joseph in Waldorf

1/23/1995 - Diocesan Censor of books and periodicals - appointed

7/1/1996 - Pastor for Saint Edward in Austin, Our Lady of Loretto in Brownsdale

8/6/1997 - Leave of Absence

4/17/1998 - Chaplain for the Sisters of Third Order Regular of Saint Francis of Assisi at Assisi Heights in Rochester by Rev. Michael Hoepfner, Diocesan Administrator

Current Address: c/o Francis Felber, 754 S Oak Street , Barron WI 54817